Content | A-Z

OWNER'S HANDBOOK.

BMW 3 SERIES SALOON.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Handbook.

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your vehicle, the easier you will find it is to operate in traffic. We therefore request:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important information on how to operate your vehicle, helping you get the most out of your BMW's technical features. It also contains information to help keep your BMW operating safely on the road and maintain its full resale value.

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook is the most up-to-date version. After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Supplementary information is provided in further on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

NOTES

QUICK REFERENCE

CONTROLS

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

DRIVING HINTS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

English ID8 VI/24, -
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

Orientation

The quickest way to find information on a particular topic or feature is to consult the alphabetical index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend the quick reference in the Owner's Handbook.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the contents of the printed Owner's Handbook are up to date. Any updates introduced after the copy deadline may result in discrepancies between the printed Owner's Handbook and the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication is available as a printed book from authorised Service Partners.

These topics are also covered in the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Media overview

General

Content from the Owner's Handbook can be accessed through various media. The Owner's Handbook is available in the following media:

- Printed Owner's Handbook.
- Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Handbook

The printed Owner's Handbook shows all standard equipment, national-market equipment and optional equipment which is offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Handbook shows all standard equipment, national-market equipment and optional equipment which is offered or maybe offered in future on a model-specific basis. The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown on the control display.

Selecting the Owner's Handbook

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Owner's Handbook"
4. Select the required method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling within the Owner's Handbook

Swipe up or down until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context-sensitive help

General

The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Handbook is displayed.

Selecting context-sensitive help from a menu

1. Press and hold the desired menu item.
2. "General help"

Selecting context-sensitive help from a Check Control message

To switch directly from the Check Control message on the control display:

"Owner's Handbook"

Additional documentation

Additional documents, for example, Supplementary Owner's Handbooks, booklets or supplementary sheets, complement the media of the Owner's Handbook. Supplementary Owner's Handbooks or booklets contain information on special models or information that must be communicated in printed form due to legal requirements, for example. Supplementary sheets may contain deviations from the contents of individual or all media in the Owner's Handbook. Observe all additional documents that may be enclosed with the on-board literature.

Additional sources of information

Authorised Service Partner

An authorised Service Partner, for example a dealership or a BMW Service Partner will be happy to answer any questions you may have.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW – on technology, for example – are available on the Internet: www.bmw.com.

BMW Driver's Guide App

The BMW Driver's Guide App shows all standard equipment, national-market equipment and optional equipment which is offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide web version

BMW Driver's Guide Web shows all standard, national-market and optional equipment which is offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis. BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed on any current browser.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Handbook

Icon	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts on a display in the vehicle for selecting functions.
›...‹	Commands for the voice control system.
››...‹‹	Replies by the voice control system.

Actions

Actions that need to be carried out are shown as a numbered list. The list of steps must be carried out in the specified sequence.

1. First action.
2. Second action.

Lists

Alternative options and lists of items with no implied sequence are shown as bullet point lists.

- First option.
- Second option.

Icon on components and assemblies

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Handbook.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook shows all standard equipment, national-market equipment and optional equipment which is offered or will be offered on a model-specific basis, i.e. in the model range. As a result, this Owner's Handbook may also contain descriptions and illustrations of equipment, systems and functions which are not installed in the vehicle in question, for example due to:

- Selected optional equipment.
- National-market version or national-market equipment.
- Possibility of subsequent enabling and software updates.

This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.

Before starting a journey, check whether a piece of equipment or a function that is described is available in the vehicle. Information about whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or whether and when the function can be installed in the vehicle can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If a piece of equipment, system or function is described in the Owner's Handbook, this does not mean that it will be available in the vehicle.

Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

If certain equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to any additional documentation provided, for example, Supplementary Owner's Handbooks, supplementary sheets.

In right-hand drive vehicles, some operating elements are arranged differently from those shown in this Owner's Handbook.

Production date

The production date of your vehicle can be found at the bottom of the body pillar on the driver's door.

The production date is defined as the calendar month and the calendar year in which the vehicle body and the transmission assemblies are joined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

Status of the Owner's Handbook

General

The high standards of safety and quality that characterise the vehicles are ensured through ongoing development. On rare occasions, this may mean that the features described in this handbook will vary from those in your vehicle.

For Australia/New Zealand: general

When reading this Owner's Handbook, please bear the following in mind: to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards, we pursue a policy of continuous, ongoing development. Because modifications in the design of both vehicles and accessories may be introduced at any time, your own vehicle's equipment may vary from that described in this manual. For the same reason, it is also impossible to guarantee that all descriptions will be completely accurate in all respects.

We must therefore request your understanding of the fact that the manufacturer of your vehicle is unable to recognise legal claims based on discrepancies between the data, illustrations and descriptions in this Owner's Handbook and your own vehicle's equipment. Please note, too, that some of the optional equipment described in this Owner's Handbook is not available on Australian models due to restrictions imposed by Australian Design Rules and other requirements.

Should you require any further information, please contact your Service Partner or a qualified specialist workshop, who will be pleased to advise you.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the contents of the printed Owner's Handbook are up to date. Any updates introduced after the copy deadline may result in discrepancies between the printed Owner's Handbook and the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Your own safety

Intended use

Please comply with the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Handbook.
- Information attached to the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical data of the vehicle.
- The applicable laws and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle is used.
- Vehicle papers and legal documents.
- Information on batteries.

  In accordance with Battery Regulation (EU) 2023/1542, information on the electrochemical performance and durability of the 48V battery and the high-voltage battery is documented on the Internet: www.bmw.com.

Warranty

The vehicle is technically designed for the operating conditions and approval (homologation) requirements of the country to which it was first delivered. If the vehicle is to be driven in another country, it may need to first be adapted to any different operating conditions and approval requirements prevailing in that country. If the vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country, no warranty claims can be lodged there for the vehicle. Warranty claims may also be invalidated if the electrical system has been modified, for example through the use of control units, hardware, or software which the vehicle manufacturer classifies as unsuitable. An

authorised Service Partner is able to provide further information.

Note: in addition to the warranty required by law, the selling Authorised BMW Retailers or the selling BMW AG subsidiaries in Germany grant additional benefits with the purchase of new BMW vehicles within the framework of the BMW Warranty Booklet. More information: www.bmw.de/qualitaetsbrief.

Maintenance and repairs

The advanced technology used in your vehicle, for example the state-of-the-art materials and high-performance electronics, requires appropriate maintenance and repair methods.

The vehicle manufacturer therefore recommends having the corresponding work performed by an authorised Service Partner, e.g., a BMW Service branch or Service Partner. If you choose to use a different specialist workshop, BMW recommends using one that performs the corresponding work, such as maintenance and repair, in accordance with BMW specifications and that employs properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Handbook, facilities of this kind are referred to as "another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop".

If work such as maintenance and repair is carried out incorrectly, it could result in subsequent damage with associated safety risks.

Incorrectly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can cause components, for example the radar sensors, to fail or malfunction, resulting in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessories that are approved by BMW and are therefore suitable for this purpose.

You are recommended to consult a BMW Service Partner for advice on genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and expert advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW.

BMW accepts product responsibility for genuine BMW parts and accessories. However, BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each third-party product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Likewise no guarantee can be assumed even if the product has been granted official approval in a specific country. Tests performed for such approvals cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient.

Vehicle data and data protection

Responsibility and rights

Responsibility for data

Within the scope of the data protection regulations, the manufacturer of the vehicle is responsible for processing personal data which is collected when the vehicle is used or in relation to the associated customer support and online services.

Personal identification

Every vehicle has a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, and with the assistance of the relevant authorities, the registered keeper can be identified from the vehicle identification number and the number plate. There are also other ways of tracing data collected in the vehicle back to the driver or registered keeper, for example, via the ConnectedDrive account used.

Data protection laws

Vehicle users have certain rights under applicable data protection law in respect of companies that process personal data from the vehicle. These rights include, among others, a free and comprehensive right to information.

These companies may be:

- Vehicle manufacturer.
- Qualified Service Partners.
- Specialist workshops.
- Service providers.

Among other things, vehicle users may request information about what personal data is processed, what it is used for and where it has come from.

The right of access also extends to information about data that has been transferred to other companies or bodies. Proof of ownership or use is required in order to obtain this information.

Please refer to the vehicle manufacturer's website for the applicable data protection policy. This data protection policy contains information about the right to have data deleted or corrected. The vehicle manufacturer's website also provides its contact details and those of its data protection officer.

The registered keeper can have the data stored in the vehicle read out by an authorised Service Partner, or another qualified Service Partner, or a specialist workshop, for a fee, as necessary.

Vehicle data is read out by the socket for onboard diagnosis, which is required by law.

Data processing

Processing of personal data may be necessary to enable the manufacturer of the vehicle to fulfil obligations to the customer or to legislators, or to offer high-quality products and services.

These include, for example:

- To fulfil contractual obligations regarding the sale, servicing and repair of vehicles, for example sales processes, maintenance.
- To fulfill contractual obligations regarding the provision of digital vehicle services, for example BMW ConnectedDrive.
- To safeguard product quality and the research and development of new products, and to optimise service processes.
- To perform sales, service and administration processes, including branches and National Sales Companies.
- To provide customer support, for example contract processing.
- To fulfil legal obligations, for example information regarding Technical Campaigns.
- To process warranty claims.

Data collection

Type of data collected

Depending on the situation, the following personal data may be collected in connection with the vehicle.

Contact details

- Name, address, telephone number.
- Email address.

Contract data

- Customer number, contract number, booked online services.
- Stored payment information, for example credit card number.

Transaction and interaction data

Information about purchases of products and services or interactions with customer support.

Use of apps and services of the vehicle manufacturer

Information on the use of apps on mobile devices and online services, as well as on the functions and settings of the vehicle.

Vehicle-related sensor data and usage data

Data generated or processed in the vehicle.

- Driver assistance systems: processing of sensor data which is used to evaluate the vehicle's surroundings or the driver's behaviour.
- Personal settings: settings saved in the vehicle profile, for example seat setting.
- Multimedia, navigation, for example destinations.

Time of data collection

Personal data may be collected at the following times:

- In the event of direct contact with the vehicle manufacturer.
- When purchasing services directly, for example online services.
- When using vehicles, products, services and digital offers, for example, via apps.
- When communicating personal data through qualified partners of the vehicle manufacturer or through third-party providers, provided that data protection requirements are met.
- When vehicle data, including the vehicle identification number, is read out during service, maintenance and repair activities.

Data in the vehicle

General

A number of electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Electronic control units process data that they receive from vehicle sensors, generate themselves, or exchange with one another, for example. Many of the control units are necessary for safe operation of the vehicle, or provide assistance while driving, for example driver assistance systems. There are also control units which manage comfort or infotainment functions.

Personal data saved in the vehicle can be deleted at any time. This data is transmitted to third parties on personal request, for example, in the context of using online services or due to a legal obligation to which the manufacturer is subject. The transfer depends on the settings selected for using the services.

For further information:

Reset vehicle data, see page 73.

Sensor data

Driver assistance systems, for example Active Cruise Control, Collision Warning, or Attentiveness Assistant, process sensor data which is used to evaluate the vehicle's surroundings or the driver's behaviour.

These include, for example:

- Status messages relating to the vehicle and its individual components, for example wheel speed, wheel circumferential velocity, deceleration, lateral acceleration, fastened seat belts.
- Ambient conditions, for example temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is processed within the vehicle and is usually temporary. In this case, it is always only processed beyond the operating time if it is necessary for the provision of services agreed with the customer, if the customer has consented to this or if this is necessary for the fulfilment of a legal obligation.

Electronic components

Electronic components, for example control devices and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component use and wear, maintenance requirements, events

or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or the vehicle's surroundings, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fill levels, tyre inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults of important system components, for example lights and brakes.
- Responses of the vehicle to particular driving situations, for example triggering of an airbag, activation of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required so that the control units can perform their functions. It is also used for detecting and rectifying malfunctions, as well as to optimise vehicle functions.

Most of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or fault memories in response to specific circumstances.

Personal settings

Comfort functions, such as seat, climate or light settings, enhance the driving experience. The personal settings for these functions can be saved in a BMW ID or in a driver profile within the vehicle and retrieved as required, for example if the settings have been changed in the meantime by another driver. Depending on the equipment, these profiles can be saved in the vehicle manufacturer's secure data systems. When changing vehicles, a BMW ID can simply be transferred to another vehicle.

The vehicle settings stored in a BMW ID or a driver profile can be changed or deleted at any time.

For further information:

Reset vehicle data, see page 73.

Multimedia and navigation

Data can be additionally imported into the vehicle entertainment and communication system, for example, via smartphone. The imported data can be processed within the vehicle, for example to play the user's favourite music.

Depending on the equipment, this data includes:

- Multimedia data, such as music or photos, for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Destinations: depending on the equipment, route guidance can be started automatically using destinations learned by the navigation system.
- Data on usage of Internet services.

This data may be saved locally in the vehicle or stored on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, for example, a smartphone or USB stick.

Service data

General

When services are required, for example repairs, service operations, warranty work and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

Stored data

Electronic vehicle components may contain data storage media which store technical information relating to the vehicle condition, events and faults. The data required for service measures is processed locally and is deleted automatically once the work is complete. An authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can read out the information. During servicing and

repair work, data is read out by the socket for on-board diagnosis using special diagnosis systems and sent to the vehicle manufacturer. The customer is entitled to withhold consent to the data being read out and forwarded.

Optimising service processes

The vehicle manufacturer maintains documentation relating to each vehicle to ensure the best possible service is provided. Within the scope of legal requirements, this documentation may be made available to authorised third parties, for example specialist workshops.

The authorised third parties may only use this data for the purposes of performing the service or repair order in question. This prevents work from being duplicated unnecessarily on the vehicle, for example.

Ensuring product quality

The data logs the technical conditions of the vehicle and helps in locating faults, complying with warranty obligations and improving quality.

To ensure product quality and the development of new products, data on the usage of individual components and systems, for example, lights, brake, electric windows, displays, can be read out. This data helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimise the design of components and systems. Data analysis also provides the basis for Technical Campaigns and mandatory recalls.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring obligations to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfil these obligations, the vehicle manufacturer requires technical data from the vehicle. This also includes the software versions in the vehicle.

Goodwill and warranty claims

Data from the vehicle can also be used to check customer warranty claims. If goodwill or warranty claims are asserted, the data is read out and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer to resolve the claims promptly.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop performs repair or servicing work.

Control over data

You may request the stopping of data transfers to the vehicle manufacturer for the purpose of ensuring product quality and optimising service processes.

Legal requirements regarding data disclosure

According to current law, the vehicle manufacturer is obliged to provide the authorities with any data it has stored. Data is provided to the extent required and on a case-by-case basis, for example to investigate a criminal offence.

Current law also gives state bodies authorisation to read out data from the vehicle themselves for individual cases. Information can be read out from the airbag control unit, etc. to shed light on the circumstances of an accident, for example.

Within the framework of legal obligations in the EU, certain vehicle consumption data, such as fuel or energy consumption and distance travelled, also called OBFCM data, is sent to the EU Commission by the vehicle manufacturer. The registered keeper may refuse to provide this data for this purpose.

Mobile devices

Depending on the equipment, mobile devices such as smartphones can be connected to the vehicle to control smartphone functions from the vehicle, for example Apple CarPlay. Sound and images from the mobile end device may be played back or displayed through the multimedia system in the vehicle, for example.

Selected information is transferred to the mobile end device at the same time. Depending

on the type of integration, this includes position data and other general vehicle information, for example. This enables optimum use of selected apps, for example navigation and music playback. How the data is processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used.

Services

General

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, data can be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems, for example with BMW ConnectedDrive.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

The various functions of online services provided by the vehicle manufacturer are described in the appropriate place, for example, in the Terms and Conditions or on the manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is also given.

Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for example with the vehicle manufacturer's data systems set up for this purpose.

Any collection, processing and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide services always takes place on the basis of suitable legal bases, such as a contractual agreement, a legal obligation or consent of the user.

BMW ConnectedDrive

BMW ConnectedDrive networks the vehicle with a number of digital services. When a service is used, the data stored in the vehicle and required to provide the service is generally transferred online, for example, information on identifying and locating the vehicle. Depending on the specific data processing, the basis is a contractual agreement with the user or prior express consent of the user.

In individual cases, the transmission of data is triggered as a result of predefined events, such as an intelligent emergency call. The wireless network connection is established via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile end devices brought into the vehicle, for example smartphones. Data transfer can be deactivated on request. After deactivation of data transfer, some functions may no longer be available.

The wireless network connection enables online functions to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data protection conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence over the data that is exchanged.

Information as to how personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant provider.

Personal decision

Every user decides for themselves whether they wish to enter into a contract for a service or a service package, for example, for BMW ConnectedDrive. Information about the scope and content of data processing is provided before the service is purchased.

The user has the option to deactivate the services at any time and consequently to stop the data processing required for the services. It is also possible to have the entire data connection activated or deactivated. Excluded from this are functions and services which are required by law, for example emergency call systems.

Transparency concerning vehicle data

BMW CarData provides transparency in handling vehicle data with the use of BMW ConnectedDrive. BMW CarData enables users to control whether vehicle data being processed in the context of BMW ConnectedDrive is transferred to third parties. Users can decide for each individual service offering whether data access is to be granted or refused to third parties, for example to insurance companies.

An archive can also be requested from BMW CarData at any time. The archive provides information on the data that has been transmitted and saved in the context of BMW ConnectedDrive. BMW CarData can only be accessed by third-party providers via the vehicle manufacturer's servers. Direct access to the vehicle and its data is not permitted.

More information on BMW CarData is available on the BMW ConnectedDrive Customer Portal.

Statutory emergency call system

Principle

The eCall emergency call system required by law enables manual or automatic emergency calls to be made, for example in the event of an accident.

The emergency calls are answered by the public rescue coordination centre.

The legally required eCall emergency call system uses the infrastructure of a public emergency call number, for example, 112 within the EU.

General

For information on the legally required eCall emergency call system, its operation and its functions, see the chapter Emergency call.

The eCall service, which is based on the 112 emergency call in the EU, for example, is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.

If a serious accident occurs, the legal emergency call system is activated automatically by on-board sensors as standard practice. It is also triggered automatically if the vehicle is equipped with an intelligent emergency call system in the event that this system fails to work in the event of a serious accident.

The legal emergency call system can also be triggered manually if required.

If a critical system failure occurs that would put the eCall statutory emergency call system out of operation, the vehicle occupants receive a warning.

For further information:

- Emergency call, see page 378.
- Malfunction, see page 379.

Information on data processing

The eCall statutory emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with the following regulations:

- Protection of personal data: Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council.
- Protection of personal data: Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council and its Member State implementing acts.

Personal data is only processed for the purpose of transmitting eCall emergency calls to the single European emergency call number 112.

SIM card

The statutory emergency call system operates via mobile communications through a separate SIM card installed in the vehicle. This SIM card is not permanently connected to the mobile communications network; rather, it remains connected only as long as the emergency call is active.

Data types and their recipients

The legal emergency call system may only collect and process the following data:

- The vehicle identification number for rapidly identifying the vehicle, for example the model.
- Vehicle type, for example passenger car.
- Type of vehicle drive, for estimating risks during recovery, e.g. fire hazard.
- The vehicle's position at the time of the accident, its last three locations and the direction of travel, in order to locate the vehicle more quickly on very complex route sections, for example.
- A log of the automatic system activation, along with the time stamp.
- Control information, which tells rescue services whether the emergency call was triggered automatically or manually, for example.
- A time stamp for determining the time of the accident in order to optimise the deployment plans of the rescue services.
- The direction of travel for establishing which side of the motorway is affected, for example.

The authorities of the state in whose territory the eCall system emergency call is made determine which emergency call centres receive and process the legal emergency call.

Data processing configuration

The legal emergency call system ensures that the data stored on the system memory can only be accessed outside the system once an emergency call is triggered.

The data collected for the legal emergency call system is only saved in the vehicle and sent to the rescue coordination centre when an emergency call is triggered.

The legal emergency call system ensures that it cannot be traced and that it is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

The legal emergency call system ensures that the data in the internal system memory is deleted automatically and continuously.

The vehicle's location data is continuously overwritten in the system's internal memory so that only the vehicle's last three locations - which the system needs for normal operation - are ever stored.

The activity data log of the eCall statutory emergency call system is retained only for as long as is necessary to handle the eCall emergency call and under no circumstances for any longer than 13 hours after the eCall emergency call was triggered.

Rights of individuals affected by data processing

The individual affected by data processing, for example the registered keeper, has the right to access the data and can request that their personal data, as well as data whose processing does not comply with legal requirements, be corrected, deleted, or restricted as applicable. Each time that data is corrected, deleted or blocked in line with these regulations, the third parties to whom the data was transmitted must be notified, insofar as this is reasonably practical.

The individual affected by data processing has the right to file a complaint with the relevant data protection body if they believe that their rights have been violated as a result of having their personal data processed.

For matters relating to access rights, please contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Intelligent emergency call system

Principle

The registered keeper has the right to use either the intelligent emergency call system or the legal emergency call system.

The intelligent emergency call system enables manual or automatic emergency calls to be placed, for example in the event of an accident.

The emergency calls are answered by an emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer.

The legal emergency call system is always on standby in addition to the intelligent emergency call system. The statutory emergency call system takes over the emergency call function if the intelligent emergency call system is not operational for technical reasons, for example, if the emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer cannot be reached.

The system can be configured so that emergency calls are always made by the legal emergency call system and not by the intelligent emergency call system. The adjustment can be made by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Emergency call, see page 378.

Legal basis

The intelligent emergency call system processes personal data in accordance with the following regulations:

- Protection of personal data: Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council.
- Protection of personal data: Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council and its Member State implementing acts.

The legal basis for activation and operation of the intelligent emergency call system is the concluded ConnectedDrive contract for this function.

SIM card

The intelligent emergency call system operates by mobile communications using the SIM card installed in the vehicle for BMW ConnectedDrive. The SIM card is permanently logged into the mobile phone network so a connection setup can be established quickly. The data is sent to the vehicle manufacturer in emergencies.

Improving quality

The vehicle manufacturer also uses the data sent as part of an emergency call to improve product and service quality and for the purpose of accident research where applicable.

Position determination

Only the provider of the mobile phone network is able to determine the position of the vehicle based on mobile phone mast locations. The network operator is not able to link the vehicle identification number to the phone number of the installed SIM card. Only the vehicle manufacturer is able to link the vehicle identification number to the phone number of the installed SIM card.

Log data for emergency calls

The log data for emergency calls is saved in a vehicle memory. The oldest log data is regularly deleted. The log data includes information on when and where an emergency call was placed, for example in the event of an accident.

In exceptional cases, the log data can be read out from the vehicle memory. The log data is usually read out only if a court order has been issued and is only possible when the relevant devices are connected directly to the vehicle.

Automatic emergency call

The system is designed so that it automatically triggers an emergency call if the vehicle sensors detect an accident of corresponding severity.

Sent information

If an emergency call is made by the intelligent emergency call system, the same information is sent to the appointed emergency call centre as is normally sent to the public rescue coordination centre by the legal emergency call system.

Furthermore, the intelligent emergency call system also conveys the following additional information to an emergency call centre appointed by the vehicle manufacturer and, where applicable, to the public rescue coordination centre:

- Accident data, for example the direction of the collision as detected by the vehicle sensors in order to assist the rescue services in their deployment plans.
- Contact details, for example the phone number of the installed SIM card and the driver's phone number, if available, so that those involved in the accident can be contacted quickly if necessary.

Data storage

The data relating to a placed emergency call is saved in the vehicle. The data contains information about the emergency call, for example the place and time it was made.

In the event of an intelligent emergency call, the audio recordings of the emergency call are stored by the manufacturer's emergency call centre.

Audio recordings are saved for 24 hours in case details of the emergency call need to be analysed. After that, the audio recordings are deleted.

Disclosure of personal data

The data obtained in the context of an intelligent emergency call is used only to process the emergency call and, where applicable, for the purpose of accident research. If legally obliged to do so, the vehicle manufacturer will disclose the data processed by it.

Event data recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main function of this EDR is to record data in the event of crash or near-miss situations, such as triggering of an airbag or collision with a road obstacle; this data helps to understand how the vehicle's systems behaved. The EDR serves to record data during a short time period (maximum 30 seconds or typically less) that relates to driving dynamics and the vehicle's safety systems.

The EDR installed in this vehicle is used for recording the following data, for example:

- The operating behaviour of various vehicle systems.
- Whether the driver and front passenger had fastened their seat belts.
- How far the driver had pressed the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal, if at all.
- The speed at which the vehicle was travelling.

This data can help to gain a better understanding of the circumstances leading to crashes and injuries.

EDR data is only recorded by the vehicle if there is a severe accident; under normal driving conditions, no data is recorded by the EDR and no personal data is saved either, for example no data about name, gender, age or accident location.

However, other parties such as law enforcement authorities can link the EDR data with the sort of personally identifiable data that is routinely gathered during the investigation of an accident.

To read out the data recorded by the EDR, it is necessary to have special equipment and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement authorities in possession of special equipment can read out the informa-

tion if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General

Depending on the national-market equipment, the vehicle identification number is located at different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all the positions that are possible for the model range.

Engine compartment

The vehicle identification number is engraved in the engine compartment, on the right side of the vehicle.

Type plate on right-hand side

The vehicle identification number is on the type plate on the right-hand side of vehicle.

Type plate on left-hand side

The vehicle identification number is on the type plate on the left-hand side of vehicle.

Windscreen

The vehicle identification number is additionally located behind the windscreen.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Vehicle ID (VIN):"

Getting in

Opening and closing

Vehicle key

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Pre-conditioning.
	Depending on the equipment: Open/close the luggage compartment. Open the luggage compartment.
	Home lights.

Access to vehicle interior

Unlocking with the vehicle key

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap have been unlocked because of the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

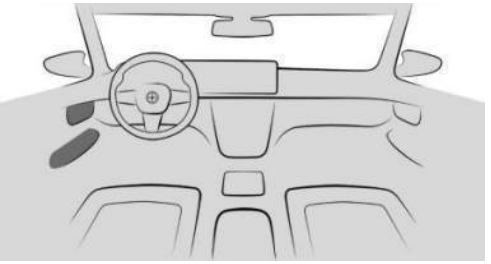
Locking with the vehicle key

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Central locking system buttons

Overview



The central locking system buttons are located on the front door.

Lock.

Unlock.

Locking the vehicle

Press the button with the front doors closed.

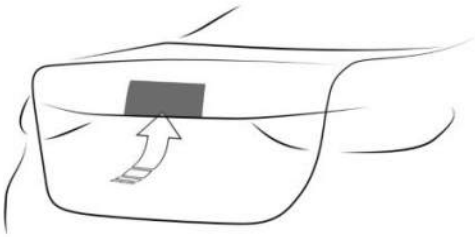
The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button.

Access to the luggage compartment

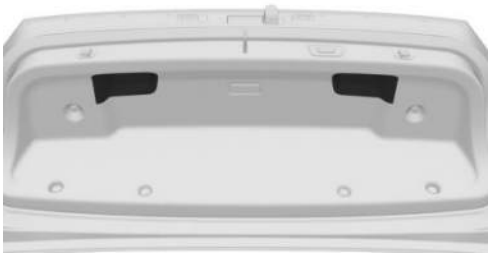
Opening the luggage compartment



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the luggage compartment.
-  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

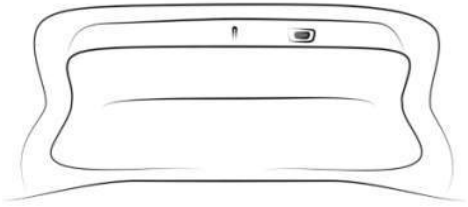
  The doors are unlocked if applicable.

Closing the luggage compartment manually



Depending on equipment: pull down the luggage compartment lid by the recessed handles.

Closing the luggage compartment automatically

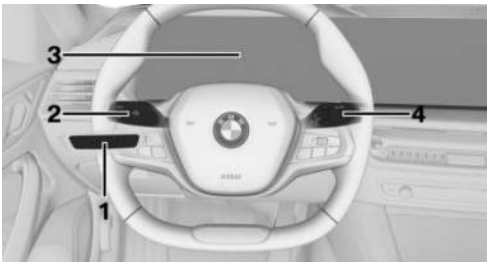


Depending on the equipment:

-  Press the button on the luggage compartment.
-  Hold down the button on the vehicle key until the luggage compartment is closed.

Displays, operating elements

Around the steering wheel



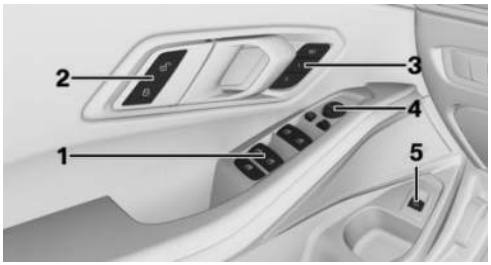
1 Light switch
2 Turn indicator, high-beam headlight
3 Instrument cluster
4 Windscreen wipers

Indicator and warning lights

Indicator and warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

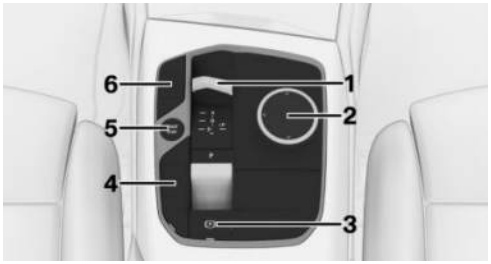
When switching on drive-ready state, the functionality of some lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

Driver's door



1 Window lifters
2 Central locking system
3 Seats, comfort functions
4 Exterior mirrors
5 Luggage compartment

Control centre



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 Driving Experience Control
5 Start/Stop button
6 Assistance systems

BMW iDrive

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Go to the main menu.
MEDIA	Go to the Media/Radio menu.
TEL	Go to the Telephone menu.
MAP	Go to the navigation map.
NAV	Go to the destination entry menu of the navigation system.
BACK	Go to previous menu.
OPTION	Go to the Options menu.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice control of various vehicle functions.

Activating voice input

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.
2. Say the command.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

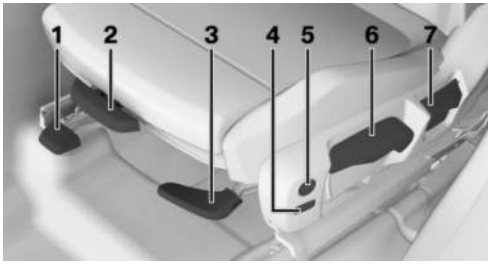
Cancelling voice input

-  Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹
- Slide the Controller to the right or left.
- Press the Controller.

Adjustment and operation

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Manually adjustable seats

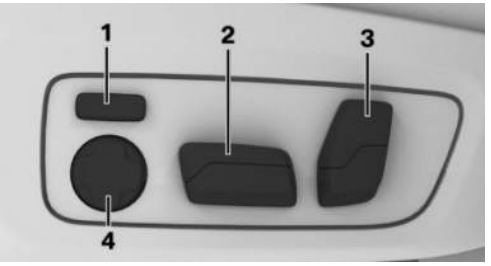


1 Longitudinal direction
2 Thigh support
3 Seat angle
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest angle

Partly electrically adjustable seats

1 Longitudinal direction
2 Thigh support
3 Backrest angle
4 Height, seat angle
5 Lumbar support

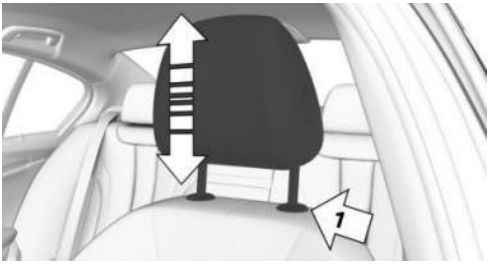
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Backrest width
2 Height/longitudinal direction/seat angle
3 Head restraint/backrest angle
4 Lumbar support

Adjusting the head restraint

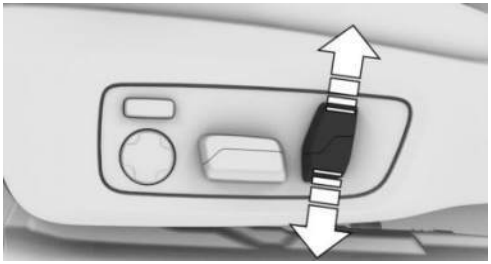
Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- ▷ Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Up: push the head restraint upwards.

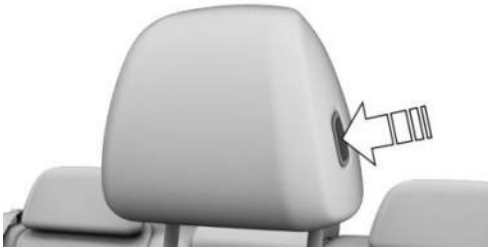
Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Adjusting the height: electrical head restraints



Press the switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance



- Back: press the button and push back the head restraint.
- Forward: pull the head restraint forwards.

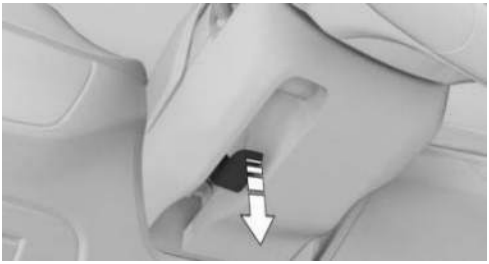
Adjusting the distance: M sports seat

The distance from the back of the head is adjusted by the seat backrest angle.

Adjust the exterior mirrors

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirrors in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select exterior mirror, automatic parking function.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



1. Fold the lever down fully.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and adjust it in the longitudinal direction and height of the seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Height of the head-up display.

Overview

The memory buttons are on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED is illuminated.
3. Press the desired memory button as long as the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Go to settings

Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Navigation destination entry

1. Navigation menu
2. "Destination input"

   A search field and entries such as the search history are displayed.
3. Select the desired entry or search field.
4. If the search field has been selected, enter characters or select one of the displayed POI categories.

   If necessary, select OK to display further information, such as a preview map.

   If necessary, accept the suggested search term.
5. Select the desired entry.
6. "Start route guidance"

Entertainment

Depending on the model variant, the following operating elements are installed either in the centre console or instrument panel:

Operating element	Function
	Turn the volume control button to adjust the volume. Press the volume control button to switch off the sound output. Pressing again restores the previous volume.
MEDIA	Change the entertainment source.
⏮	Press once: change the station/music track. Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the music track.
⏭	

Using the mobile phone

General

Once the mobile phone has been connected in the vehicle, it can be operated using iDrive and the buttons on the steering wheel.

Activate Bluetooth® on the mobile phone.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"

Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.

5. Select the required mobile phone.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone and confirm that they match.
7. If necessary, select the connection mode:

   "Use Bluetooth"

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be accepted in different ways.

- Via iDrive:

  "Accept"

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Use the knurled wheel on the steering wheel to select from the list in the instrument cluster: "Accept"

Dialling a number

1. Communication menu
2. "More"
3. "Dial number"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the icon. The call is made using the mobile phone to which the telephone function is assigned.

On the move

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Press the brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

1. With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake and engage selector lever position P.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The READY display is no longer illuminated and an acoustic signal is heard.

Drive-ready state is automatically switched off if the driver's door is opened whilst the driver's seat belt is unfastened.

Automatic Start/Stop function

The Automatic Start/Stop function helps to save fuel. It does this by switching off the engine when the vehicle stops, for example in congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. For driving off, the engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- With Automatic Hold activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R, S

- D Drive position.
- N Neutral.
- R Reverse gear.
- S Sport programme.

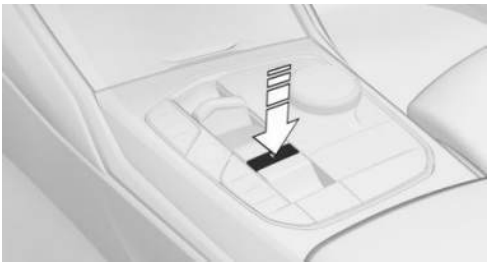
Keep the brake applied until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when drive position or reverse gear is selected.

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

Sport programme: the shift characteristics are designed for sportier drivability.

Engaging selector lever position P

Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Parking brake

Applying the parking brake

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing the parking brake

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch with the brake applied or the selector lever in position P.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

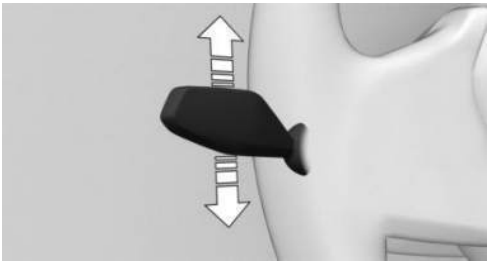
Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

Light and vision

Turn indicator, high-beam headlight, headlight flasher

Turn indicators



- Flashing: press the lever past the resistance point.
- One-touch signalling: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- To indicate a turn briefly: press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlight, headlight flasher

Press the lever forwards or pull it back.

- High-beam headlight on, arrow 1.

  The high-beam headlight is illuminated when the low-beam headlight is switched on.
- High-beam headlight off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

Buttons in the vehicle

Icon	Function
	Rear fog light.
OFF	Exterior lights off. Daytime driving lights.
	Side lights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights. Adaptive lighting functions.
	Low-beam headlight.
	Instrument lighting.
	Parking light, right.
	Parking light, left.

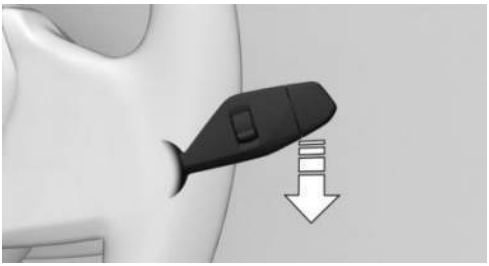
Wiper system

Switching on the wiper system

Press the lever upwards to the desired position.

- Rest position of the windscreen wipers, position 0.
- Rain sensor mode, position 1.
- Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- Fast wiper speed, position 3.

Switching off the wiper system and flick wiping



Press the lever down.

- To switch off: press lever downwards until position 0 is reached.
- To flick wipe: press the lever downwards from position 0.

  The lever returns to position 0 when released.

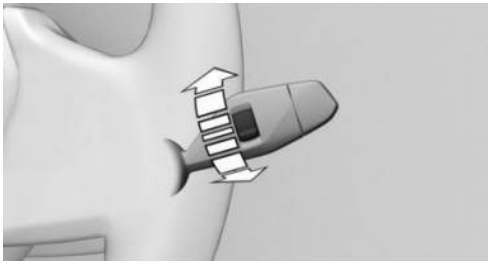
Activating/deactivating the rain sensor

To activate: press the lever upwards once from position 0, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back to position 0.

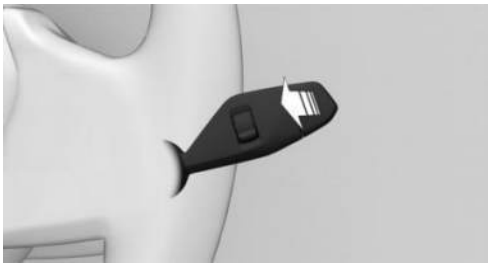
Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windscreen



Pull the lever.

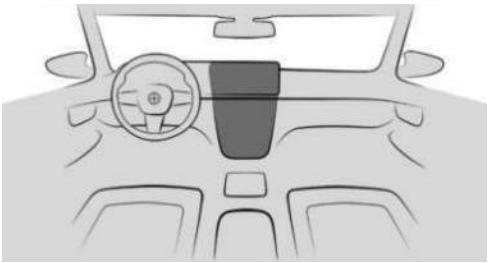
Air conditioning

Air conditioning functions

Functions in the air conditioning menu

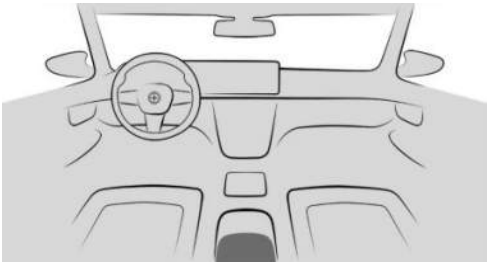
Icon	Function
	Switching the air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic programme.
22.0°C	Temperature.
A/C	Air conditioning function.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation function.
A	Automatic air recirculation control.
	Fresh air.
	Amount of air.
	Air distribution.
SYNC	SYNC programme.
	Seat heating.

Buttons, integrated automatic heating/air conditioning system



Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window heating.

Buttons, automatic rear air conditioning system



Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic programme.
▼ ▲	Temperature.
	Air distribution.
OFF	To switch off.

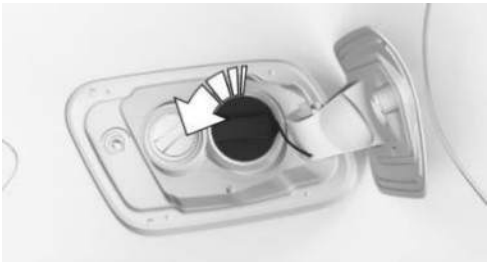
Pit stop

Refuelling

Fuel filler cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Turn the fuel filler cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.

Wheels and tyres

Tyre inflation pressure information

The tyre inflation pressure information can be found on the tyre pressure label on the body pillar of the driver's door.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

If equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitor, tyre inflation pressure corrections are applied automatically. Make sure that the tyre settings are correct. For tyres that are not listed in the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

If equipped with a flat tyre monitor, reinitialize the flat tyre monitor.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

Check regularly and adjust as necessary:

- At least twice a month.
- Before a long journey.

Electronic oil measurement

Operating requirements

A current reading is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving with the internal combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

Topping up engine oil

General

Stop the vehicle safely and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

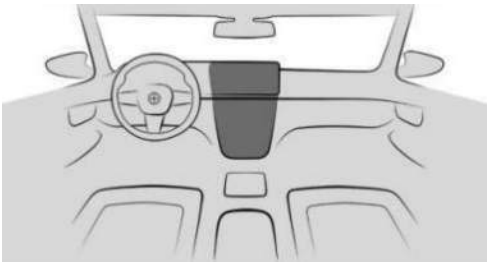
Topping up engine oil

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Turn the cap anticlockwise to open.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Tighten cap.

How to get assistance

Hazard warning lights



Hazard warning lights button

ConnectedDrive

BMW Assistance

BMW Assistance includes various services relating to the vehicle, such as Customer Support.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. If necessary, select the desired service.

   A voice contact to the selected service is established.

BMW Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to keep the vehicle mobile.

Teleservices may include the following services:

- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Teleservice Call.
- Your Service Partner.

Vehicle cockpit

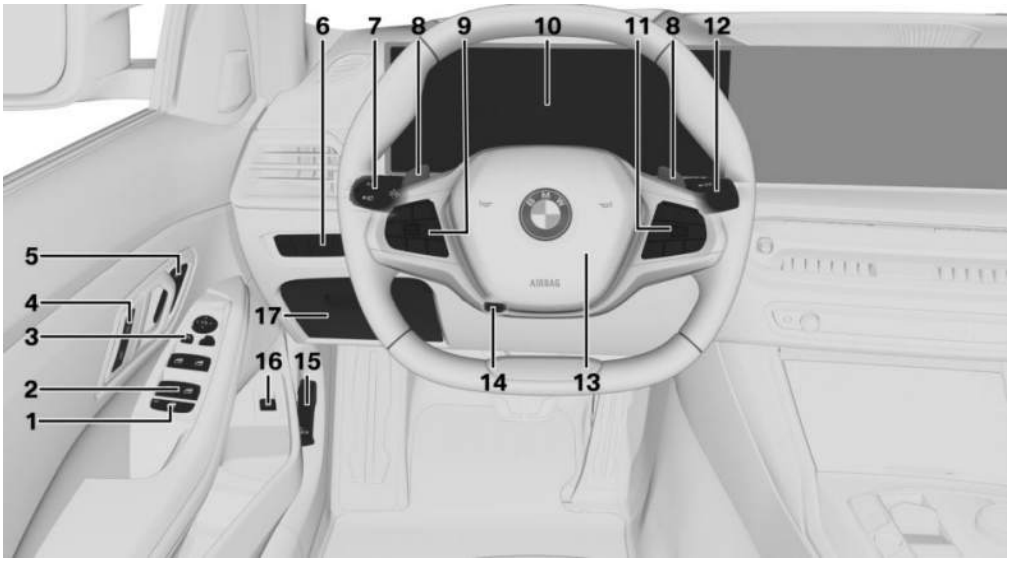
Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Around the steering wheel



1 Safety switch 101

2 Window lifters, individual 99

3 Exterior mirror operation 117

4 Central locking system 94

Unlock

Lock

5 Seat comfort functions

SET Memory function 119

6 Lights


Rear fog light 176


Light switch 171

Exterior lights off

Daytime driving lights 174


Side lights 172

Automatic driving lights control 171

Adaptive lighting functions 175

High-beam Assistant 170


Low-beam headlight 172


Instrument lighting 176


Right parking light 172


Left parking light 172

7 Turn indicator lever


Turn indicator 169


High-beam headlight, headlight flasher 169


High-beam Assistant 170

Trip data 161

G-Meter 164

8 Shift paddles 137

9 Buttons on steering wheel, left

Manual Speed Limiter 225


Depending on the equipment:

Cruise Control on/off 227


Depending on the equipment:

Active Cruise Control on/off 230

With Steering and Lane Control Assistant 242:


Cruise Control, Distance Control and lane tracking on/off

Cruise Control: to store a speed

Speed Limit Assist: to accept the suggested speed 238

Speed Limit Info: activate/deactivate warning 222

To interrupt or resume Cruise Control


Active Cruise Control: to increase the distance


Active Cruise Control: to reduce the distance


Cruise Control rocker switch

10 Instrument cluster 146

11 Buttons on steering wheel, right


Displaying the menu bar in the instrument cluster 146


Volume, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6


Voice control system 61

Selecting the menu contents in the instrument cluster 146

To change the station/music track, see the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Knurled wheel for selecting configuration menus for instrument cluster and head-up display 146

Operating the infotainment selection lists in the instrument cluster 157

12 Wiper lever

Windscreen wipers 178

AUTO Rain sensor 179

To clean the windscreen 180

13 Horn, entire area

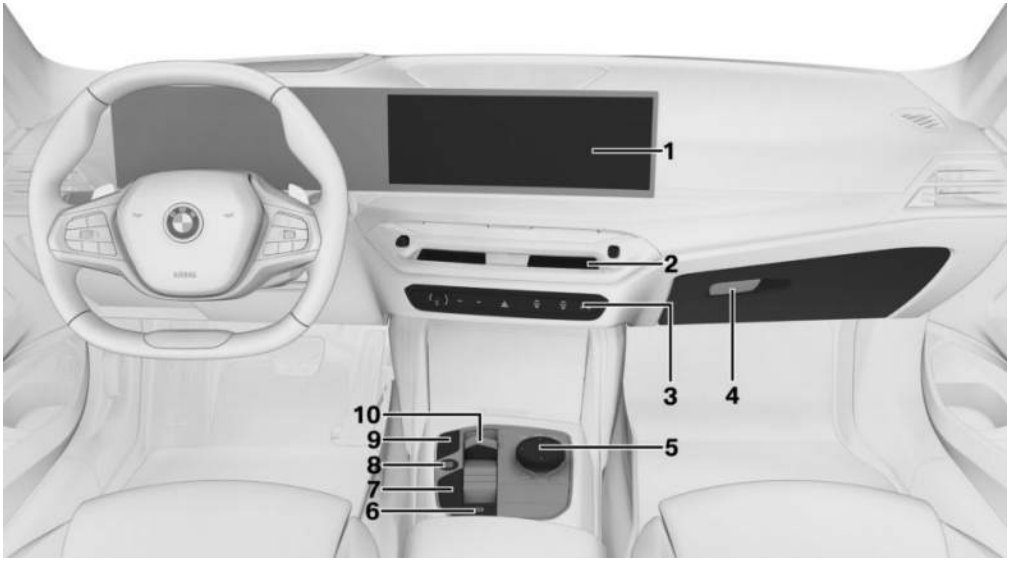
14 To adjust the steering wheel 119

15 To unlock the bonnet 353

16 Opening and closing luggage compartment 86

17 Fold-down compartment 296

Around the centre console



1 Control display 56

2 Ventilation 284

3  Hazard warning lights 375

Climate control 275

Defrost function 282

Rear window heating 282

Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Adjusting the volume


Station/track forward


Station/track back

4 Button for glove compartment 295

5 Controller with buttons 58

6 

Automatic Hold 143


Parking brake 141

7 

Driving Experience Control 140

SPORT drive mode

COMFORT drive mode

ECO PRO drive mode

8 

Switching drive-ready state on/off 132

9 

Automatic Start/Stop function 132

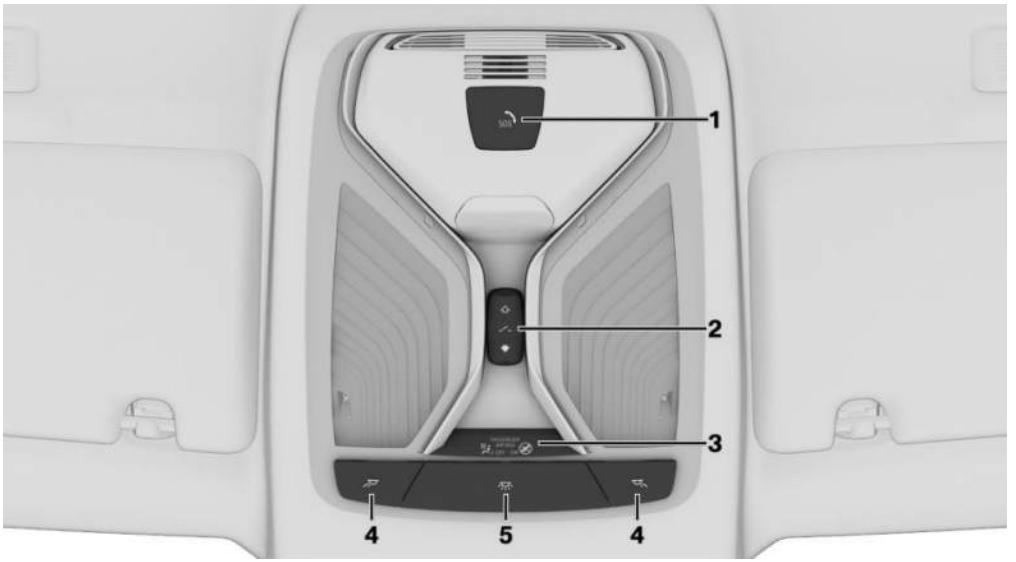

Parking assistance systems 252


Panorama View 260

Dynamic Stability Control 218

10 Selector lever 135

Around the headliner



1 SOS Emergency call, SOS 378

2 To operate the electric glass sunroof 101

3 PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF Depending on the national-market version:
Front passenger airbag indicator light 184

4 Reading lights 177

5 Interior lights 176

Sensors in the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

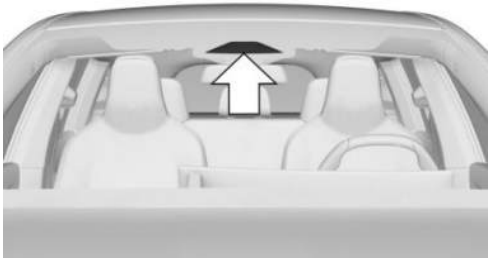
- Front camera.
- Camera behind the windscreen.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Reversing Assist Camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Side ultrasonic sensors.

Cameras

Front camera

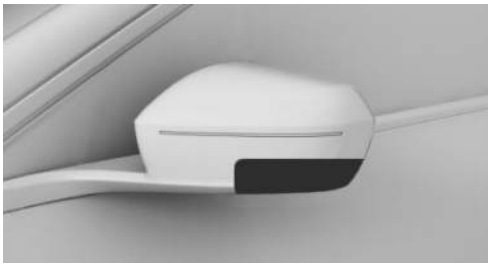
The front camera is located in the radiator grille.

Camera behind the windscreen



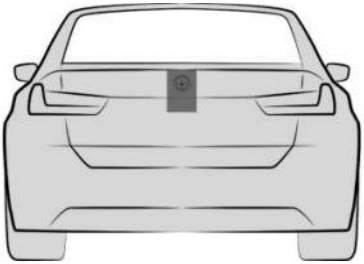
The camera behind the windscreen is located in the area of the interior mirror.

Exterior mirror cameras



An exterior mirror camera is located under each exterior mirror housing.

Reversing Assist Camera



The Reversing Assist Camera is located in the handle strip at the rear of the vehicle.

Functional requirement of the cameras

The areas of the cameras are clean and clear.

For further information:

- Washing the vehicle, see page 385.
- Vehicle care, see page 386.

System limits of the cameras

The function of the cameras can be restricted so that they indicate something incorrect, for example, in the following situations:

- In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- On steep crests or dips or on tight bends.
- When the camera field of view is covered, for example by a fogged up windscreen or stickers.
- If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- With the exterior mirrors folded in.
- With open doors or open luggage compartment.
- In the case of bright oncoming light or strong reflections, for example, if the sun is low in the sky.
- In the dark.
- The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system limits are reached.

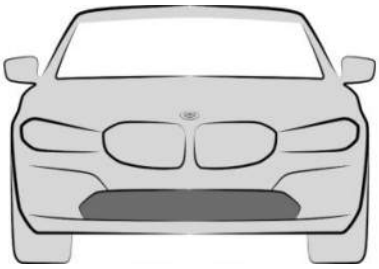
Radar sensors

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Due to external influences, e.g. interference, the radar sensors of the vehicle and thus also the driving assistance systems can be disturbed. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Front radar sensor

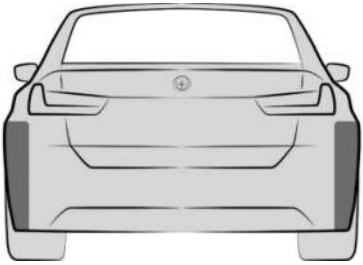


The front radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Side radar sensors, front

The radar sensors are located at the sides in the front bumper.

Side radar sensors, rear



The radar sensors are located at the sides in the rear bumper.

Functional requirement of the radar sensors

The areas of the radar sensors are clean and clear.

For further information:

- Washing the vehicle, see page 385.
- Vehicle care, see page 386.

System limits of the radar sensors

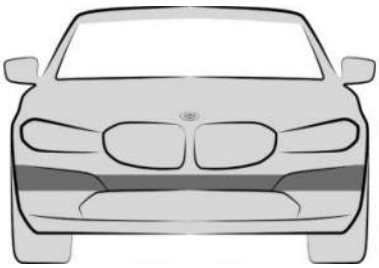
The function of the radar sensors can be restricted or not available, for example in the following situations:

- If the sensors are contaminated.
- In case of iced up sensors.
- If the sensors are obscured, for example by stickers, foils or a number plate carrier.
- If the sensors are misaligned, for example due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, for example by protruding loads.
- When the field of view of the sensors is covered, for example by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the sensors.
- At steep crests or hollows of hills.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system limits are reached.

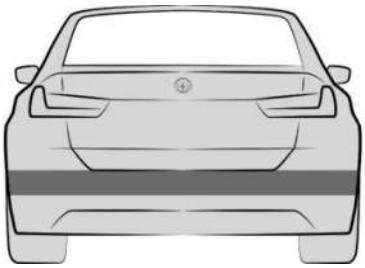
Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors, front



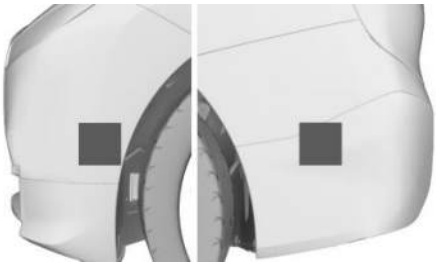
The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the front bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, rear



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the rear bumper.

Side ultrasonic sensors



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the front and rear bumpers.

Functional requirement of the ultrasonic sensors

The areas of the ultrasonic sensors are clean and clear.

For further information:

- Washing the vehicle, see page 385.
- Vehicle care, see page 386.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The physical limits of ultrasound measurement may be reached when detecting objects in situations involving the following, for example:

- If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g. by stickers.
- If the sensors are misaligned, for example due to parking damage.
- After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the sensors.
- Small children and animals.
- Persons wearing certain types of clothing, for example a jacket.
- Obstacles and people at the edge of the driving lane.
- If there is external interference with the ultrasonic sound, for example by passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- Certain weather conditions; for example, high air humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat or strong wind.
- Trailer towbars and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- Thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- Moving objects.
- Higher protruding objects, for example projecting walls.
- Objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.

- Objects with fine surfaces or fine structures, for example wire mesh fences.
- Objects with porous surfaces.
- Small and low objects such as boxes.
- Low objects already displayed, for example, kerbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- Soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- Plants or shrubs.
- In washing bays and conveyor car washes.
- Bumps, for example speed bumps.
- Dense exhaust fumes.
- The ultrasonic sensors do not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.
- If the cover of the trailer tow hitch is incorrectly seated.

A Check Control message may be displayed if the system limits are reached.

Vehicle operating condition

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

General

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Rest state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Rest state

Principle

If the vehicle is in rest state, it is switched off.

General

The vehicle is in the rest state before you open it from outside and once you have exited the vehicle and locked it.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it in order to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves and other road users, for example, by the following actions:

- Activation of standby state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Establishing the rest state automatically

The rest state is established automatically, for example in the following situations:

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

- After a few minutes, if no operation is performed on the vehicle.
- When the vehicle battery state of charge is low.
- Depending on the iDrive setting: one or both of the front doors is opened when leaving the vehicle after a journey.

In some situations, for example during a telephone call or when the low-beam headlight is switched on, the vehicle will not switch automatically to rest state.

Establishing rest state on opening the front doors

After a trip, the rest state can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, all passengers must exit the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Turn off after opening door"

Establishing the rest state manually

To establish rest state in the vehicle at the end of the journey:

Press and hold the volume control button on the radio until all displays are switched off.

Deep sleep mode

Principle

Use the deep sleep mode to prevent discharging of the vehicle battery if the vehicle is not used for a period of several weeks.

In deep sleep mode, the vehicle functions are reduced to the essentials.

General

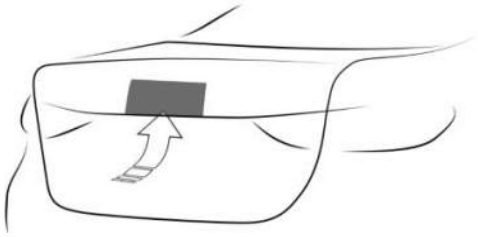
Special measures need to be taken if the vehicle is laid up for longer than three months. Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Activating/deactivating deep sleep mode

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Deep sleep mode"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deep sleep mode is automatically deactivated when drive-ready state is switched on.

Access to the vehicle



To access the vehicle in deep sleep mode, press the button on the luggage compartment. Deep sleep mode remains activated in this case.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is activated, most functions can be operated while the vehicle is still stationary. Any desired settings can be performed.

General

The vehicle is in standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Manually establishing standby state

General

The standby state can be switched on again after the rest state has been automatically established.

Using the volume control button

Press the volume control button on the radio. The control display and instrument cluster illuminate.

With the Start/Stop button

Press the Start/Stop button.

The control display and instrument cluster illuminate.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is shown in the instrument cluster. The drive-ready state is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General

Some vehicle functions can only be operated when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust gases can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it in order to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

⚠ NOTICE

Repeated attempts to start the engine or starting it several times in quick succession can cause the starter motor to overheat. Fuel will also be unburned or insufficiently burned, which could cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.

Switching on drive-ready state

General

Drive-ready state is switched on using the Start/Stop button.

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Press the brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Starting proceeds automatically for a short time and stops as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate for varying lengths of time.

Petrol engine

Depending on the motorisation, full drive power may not be available until approx. 30 seconds after the engine is started. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate in the usual way.

For further information:

Power display, see page 158.

Diesel engine

With the engine cold and at temperatures below 0 °C, 32 °F the starting operation can be delayed slightly due to automatic preheating.

A Check Control message is shown.

After the engine is started, full drive power may not be available until the engine is at operating temperature. Pay attention to the engine temperature display and power display as applicable. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate in the usual way.

For further information:

▷ Engine temperature display, see page 160.
▷ Power display, see page 158.

Display in the instrument cluster

The activated drive-ready state is indicated in the instrument cluster, depending on the equipment, by the display of information required for driving or the READY display.

Switching off drive-ready state

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, engage selector lever position P.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle changes to standby state.

BMW iDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Display and operating concept

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

General

Depending on the equipment, the functions can be operated as follows:

- Via the control display.
- Via the Controller.
- Via the touchpad.
- Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.
- Via the operating elements on the steering wheel.

For further information:

Instrument cluster, see page 146.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the traffic situation. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic situation allows you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Main menu

General

The main menu is divided into different areas.

Overview

1 Widgets
2 Status information
3 Configuration bar for main display
4 Temperature setting
5 Menu bar

Menu bar

Apps menu

Access to apps and vehicle functions. A filter can be selected. If necessary, change the filter to see the apps you want.

- "All apps": all apps and functions are displayed.
- "Infotainment": only infotainment apps are displayed.
- "Vehicle": only functions for vehicle setting are displayed.
- "Recently used": the most recently used apps are displayed.

Media menu

Access to functions of the entertainment system, for example radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication menu

Access to the telephone and message function as well as the connection and management of mobile devices, for example smartphones.

Navigation menu

Access to navigation system, destination entry and traffic information. Configurable map views as well as other functions, for example points of interest.

Climate menu

The Climate menu provides access to all air conditioning functions.

Apple CarPlay© menu

Depending on the national-market version with connected feature: access to Apple CarPlay. Apple CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used securely via iDrive.

Android Auto© menu

Depending on the national-market version with connected feature: access to Android Auto. Android Auto enables certain functions of a compatible Android smartphone to be used securely via iDrive.

Widgets

Widgets show real-time information and dynamic content, for example the latest media content or connected smartphones. The widgets also serve as buttons and allow jumping to the relevant menu.

Main display

The main display shows real-time information and dynamic content, for example, the map of the navigation system. This display also serve as buttons and allows jumping to the relevant menu.

Status information

General

The status field is located in the top area of the control display. Status information is displayed in the form of icons. Various symbols are available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Telephone status information

Icon	Meaning
	Active call.
	Data transfer not possible.
	Signal strength.
	SIM card missing.

Entertainment status information

Icon	Meaning
	USB audio.
	Bluetooth audio.
	Smartphone audio.
	Connected Music with Spotify.
	Wi-Fi.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Status information messages

Icon	Meaning
1	Number of messages.
	Check Control message.
	Traffic information.
	Suppress private information.
	Do not disturb.
	Message.

For further information:

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication, see page 6.

Other status information

Icon	Meaning
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Activation word active.
	BMW ID or driver profile.
	Route guidance active.
	Call up quicklist.
	Wireless charging active.
P	Park Distance Control: sound activated.
P	Park Distance Control: sound deactivated.

Digit input and display

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller, the touchpad, control display or voice control depending on the equipment.

Icon	Function
abc ABC	Switch between upper and lower case.
	Enter a space.
EN	Switch between languages.
	Use voice input.
OK	Confirm your digit input.
	Move the entry area to the left or right.

Input comparison

When entering data from a database, for example contacts, the selection is gradually narrowed down with each character entered and supplemented if necessary.

Activating/deactivating functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

Icon	Meaning
	Function is activated.
	Function is deactivated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Activating/deactivating audio confirmation

Audio confirmation is given for some functions, e.g. sounds are emitted when the control display is operated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

Quick access

The quicklist provides access to the shortcuts, certain settings and app recommendations.

Digit input	Operation
Show quicklist.	Swipe from top to bottom on the control display. Slide the Controller upwards. — Tap the icon in the status line.
Hide quicklist.	Swipe from the bottom up on the control display. Slide the Controller downwards.

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

Pop-ups are automatically shown on the control display for some functions. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

Shortcuts

General

The iDrive functions can be stored on the shortcuts and called up directly, for example, radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Saving a function

1. Select the desired function.
2. Press and hold the desired function.
3. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

Performing a function

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Tap the desired shortcut.

The function is carried out immediately. If you have selected a phone number for example, the connection will also be established.

Deleting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut.
3. "Delete shortcut"

BMW Curved Display

Principle

The BMW Curved Display is the single-part display on the instrument panel which is curved towards the driver. The BMW Curved Display comprises the instrument cluster on the driver's side and the control display.

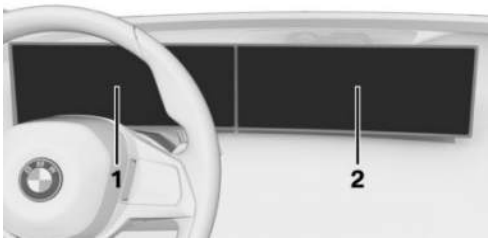
General

Follow the instructions on cleaning the BMW Curved Display in the Care chapter.

For further information:

Care of special parts, see page 388.

Overview



1 Instrument cluster 146

2 Control display 56

Control display

Principle

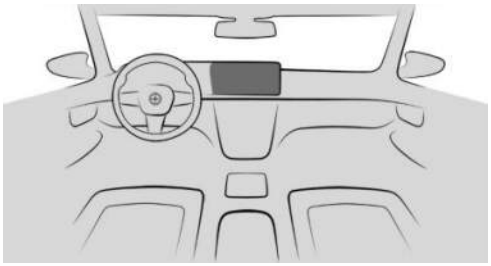
The iDrive functions are shown on the control display.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects located in front of a display may slip and damage the display. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Do not place objects in front of a display.

Overview



Control display.

Switching the control display on/off automatically

The control display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is required for operation.

In certain situations, the control display is switched off automatically, for example if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching the control display on/off manually

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. "Screen off"

Tap the control display to turn it on again.

Adjusting the brightness

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Confirm the desired setting.

Depending on the lighting conditions, the brightness control may not be immediately apparent.

System limits

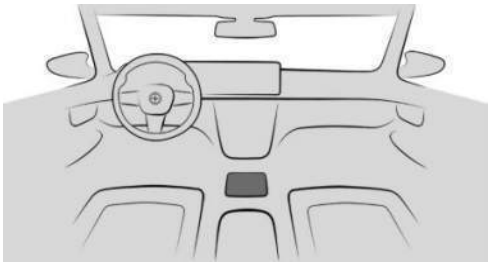
If the control display is exposed to very high temperatures, for example because of strong sunlight, the brightness may be reduced and the control display may even switch itself off. Normal functions will be restored when the temperature is reduced, for example by providing shade or using the air conditioning.

Controller

Principle

The Controller is used to select menu items and perform settings. The buttons are used to go to menus directly.

Overview



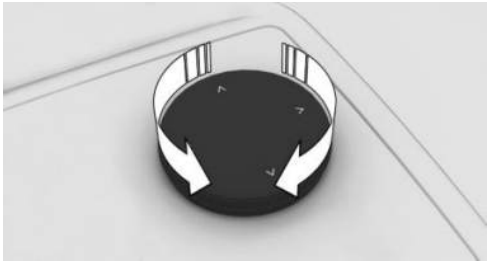
Controller

Buttons on the Controller

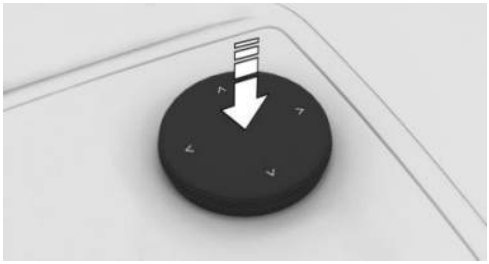
Button	Function
HOME	Go to the main menu.
MEDIA	Go to the Media/Radio menu.
TEL	Go to the Telephone menu.
MAP	Go to the navigation map.
NAV	Go to the destination entry menu of the navigation system.
BACK	Go to previous menu.
OPTION	Go to the Options menu.

Operation

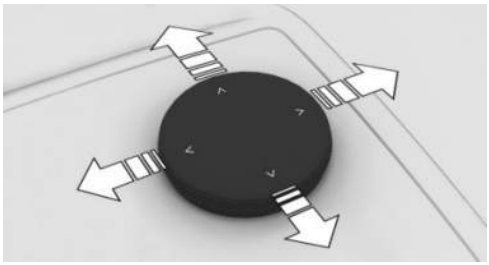
▷ Turn the Controller to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press the Controller to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Slide the Controller in four directions to change between menus, for example.



Operation using the Controller

Going to the main menu

HOME Press the button.

The main menu is displayed.

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Adjusting the main display

You can adapt the main display in the main menu.

1. Press the button.
2. If necessary, tilt the Controller to select the main display.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. Select the desired main display.

Selecting widgets

1. Use the controller to select the widgets.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.

1. Press the button, if applicable.
2. Select the widget with the Controller and press and hold the Controller.
3. The following adaptations can be selected:

- "Add widget below"
  A new widget can be added below the selected widget.
- "Delete widget page"
  The widget is deleted.
- "Sort widgets"
  The widget can be moved to the desired position.

A new widget can be added at the end of the list.

+ Select the icon at the end of the list.

Switching between menus

After selecting a menu item, a new menu is displayed.

- Slide the Controller to the left.
  The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.
- BACK Press the button.
  The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

Going to context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

1. Select the desired menu item with the Controller.
2. Press and hold the Controller.

The menu consists of various areas, such as:

- "General help": call up the Integrated Owner's Handbook.
- "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

Entering letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can only be entered when the vehicle is stationary.

Digit input

1. Turn the Controller: to select letters or numbers.
2. OK : to confirm your digit input.

For further information:

Set system language, see page 64.

Delete the input

Icon	Function
⌫	Press Controller: delete a letter or number.
⌫	Press and hold the Controller: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which entries exist can be displayed in a letter field.

1. Turn the Controller quickly to the left or right.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry for the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation by touchpad

General

Depending on the equipment, some iDrive functions can be operated with the touchpad of the controller.

The touchpad is located on the Controller. Tap the touchpad with fingers. Do not use any objects.

Selecting functions

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting.

Entering letters and numbers

- Enter characters as they are displayed on the control display.
- Always enter associated characters, for example accents or dots, so that the letter can be clearly identified.
- The input options depend on the set language. You may need to enter special characters using the Controller.

  Further information:

  Set system language, see page 64.

Entering special characters

Function	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a space.	From the centre of the touchpad, swipe to the right.
Enter a hyphen.	At the top of the touchpad, swipe to the right.
Enter an underscore.	At the bottom of the touchpad, swipe to the right.

Using the map

The navigation system's map can be moved using the touchpad.

Tap the map on the control display and then continue the operation using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Display the menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

Alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries permit a direct jump to letters for which an entry exists.

Enter the first letter on the touchpad.

The first entry of the entered letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via control display

General

Depending on the equipment, the control display may be equipped with a touchscreen.

It is possible to tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the control display with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Going to the main menu

Tap the icon.

The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting the main display

You can adapt the main display in the main menu.

1. Tap the icon.
2. Swipe the configuration bar on the right side of the screen to the left.
3. Select the desired main display.

Switching between widgets

Widgets in the main menu display dynamic content and act as a button.

To switch between the widgets, scroll the widgets up or down.

To display further functions of the widgets, scroll left or right within the widgets.

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.

1. If necessary, tap the icon.
2. Press and hold the widget.
3. The following adaptations can be selected:
   - "Add widget below"

     A new widget can be added below the selected widget.
   - "Delete widget page"

     The widget is deleted.
   - "Sort widgets"

     The widget can be moved to the desired position.

A new widget can be added at the end of the list.

Tap the icon at the end of the list.

Sorting apps

To sort the app icons again, press and hold the desired icon and move it to the desired location.

Switching between menus

After selecting a menu item, a new menu is displayed.

Select the arrow icon.

The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

Going to context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

Press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, such as:

- "General help": call up the Integrated Owner's Handbook.
- "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Entering letters and numbers

Digit input

1. If necessary, tap the icon or control display.
2. Enter the required letters and numbers.

Delete the input

Icon	Function
⌫	Tap icon: delete a letter or number.
⌫	Press and hold the icon: delete all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the control display.

Function	Operation
Move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Zoom in/out on the map.	Pinch together or move apart your fingers.
Display the menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which entries exist can be displayed in a letter field.

1. Tap the letter in front of the list.

   A letter box is displayed.
2. Tap the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry for the selected letter is displayed in the list.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice control of various vehicle functions. The Personal Assistant simplifies the operation of the vehicle by proactively suggesting and automating habits.

General

- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver's side and the passenger's side.
- Commands and numbers should be spoken articulately, with the usual emphasis and at a normal volume and speed.
- ›...‹ identifies commands that can be spoken.

Operating requirements

- A system language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive.

  Set system language, see page 64.
- Always say commands in the configured system language.

For the full range of functions, the following functions must be activated, set or booked:

- Online speech processing, see page 64.
- All settings under

  Data protection, see page 72.
- Activation word, see page 62.
- BMW ID or a driver profile.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive Services via the ConnectedDrive Store.
- Suggestions, see page 64.

Activating voice input

General

Voice input can be activated in various ways:

▷  Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.

The microphone on the driver's side is active.

▷ Say the activation word.

The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

Microphone button on steering wheel

1.  Press the button briefly.
2. Say the command.

Activation word

General

Saying the activation word starts the Personal Assistant. The Personal Assistant listens.

Preset activation word

›Hello BMW‹: The preset activation word can be activated and deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Activation word"
7. ""Hello BMW""

Personal activation word

In addition to the preset activation word, a personal activation word can be set up with an active BMW ID or a driver profile. The personal activation word can also be changed or deleted.

The activation word should consist of multiple syllables to ensure good detection.

›Hello‹: The addition is not necessary when using the personal activation word and does not need to be spoken.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Activation word"
7. "Personal activation word"
8. "Set"
9. "Start recording"

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on the national-market version, some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants, for example Siri.

In order to use Siri, the smartphone must be connected via Apple CarPlay.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle.

In addition to the BMW preset or personal activation word, the activation word of voice assistants from connected third-party providers can be used.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Additional speech assistants"
6. Select the desired setting.

Cancelling voice input

-  Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹
- Slide the Controller to the right or left.
- Press the Controller.

Possible commands

General

Commands can be used to give instructions or ask questions where the Personal Assistant provides support.

For example, it is possible to call contacts, navigate to an address, make settings or ask questions about the vehicle function. Most vehicle functions can be operated by voice commands, e.g., Park Assist.

Most of the contents on the control display, for example menu items and list entries, can be said as commands.

Help for voice control

- ›Voice commands‹: have voice command options read aloud.
- ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice control announced.
- ›Help‹: have tips and example commands for voice control announced.
- Additional example commands for the current context are displayed in the widget of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

Sample commands

- ›Call John Smith‹
- ›Drive me to Heathrow airport‹
- ›Play a classical music station‹
- ›Is my tyre pressure still okay?‹
- ›Activate climate control‹
- ›Increase the ACC distance‹
- ›Sport mode‹

Further example commands can be displayed on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Personal Assistant"
4. "Help"
5. "Example commands"

Sample commands for the current context are displayed in the widget of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

For further information:

Adapting widgets, see page 60.

Menu items

Menu items can be called up directly via the Personal Assistant. Speak the menu items as they are displayed on the control display. When speaking the menu items, the order of the menus does not have to be observed.

1. Activate the voice input.
2. ›Media‹
3. ›Saved stations‹

   The saved stations are displayed on the control display.

Owner's Handbook by voice control

It is possible to ask simple questions about the vehicle functions and about operating the vehicle.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Handbook. The function is available depending on the national-market version. The speech recognition function and the quality of the feedback may vary.

Example command: ›How do you disable the front passenger airbag?‹

The Personal Assistant gives a response. Where applicable, the section of the Integrated Owner's Handbook is displayed on the control display if the vehicle is at standstill.

Settings

Setting the system language

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the response length

You can set the Personal Assistant to use the standard dialogue or a short version. In case of the short version, the announcements by the Personal Assistant are played back in an abbreviated version.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the Personal Assistant. The function can be deactivated if the feedback is frequently cancelled inadvertently, for example due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Suggestions

General

The Personal Assistant provides support with individual suggestions.

Activating/deactivating suggestions

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Receive suggestions"

Adapting suggestions

The suggestions can be adapted, e.g. for which category suggestions are made or whether an audio signal is output.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. Select the desired setting.

Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the function, data is sent across an encrypted connection to a service provider where it is stored locally. An active ConnectedDrive contract is required for online speech processing. ConnectedDrive is available depending on the national-market version. Online speech processing is not available in all languages.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"

5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the visualisation

The visualisation of the Personal Assistant can be adjusted.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Visualisation"

Voice control from third-party providers

Depending on the equipment, third-party voice control can be activated by pressing and holding the microphone button on the steering wheel.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Long press"
6. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume control button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is obtained.

The volume setting is retained even if you change the volume of other audio sources.

Using the voice control of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be operated via voice input.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1. Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   The voice control of the smartphone is activated.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the control display.

2. Press the  button on the steering wheel to cancel the voice control of the smartphone.

Automating habits

General

The Personal Assistant can automate routines, for example, the automatic opening of windows at the same place. This involves creating rules that can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Activating/deactivating routines

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Automate habits"
4. Select the desired setting.

System limits

- The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle.

  This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.
- Certain noises may be detected and could cause problems. Keep doors and windows closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or other passengers can impair the system. Avoid

background noise in the vehicle while you are speaking.

- Strong dialects may prevent speech recognition from working properly.
- A poor data line influences the response time of the Personal Assistant and the Search.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various connection modes are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection mode to be selected depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General

Detailed information on functions and connection modes can be found in the following media of the Owner's Handbook under the specified keyword:

- Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- Printed Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Communication, and Entertainment.

The following information sources can also be used:

- Driver's Guide app.
- Driver's Guide Web.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the traffic situation. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic situation allows you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Overview

The following overview shows possible functions and the appropriate connection modes for them. The range of functions depends on the vehicle equipment and the mobile device.

Function	Connection mode	Icon on the control display
Making calls using the hands-free system. Operating telephone functions via iDrive. Keyword: calling via Bluetooth.	Bluetooth. Keyword: Bluetooth connection.	
Playing music from a mobile device. Keyword: audio.	Bluetooth audio. Keyword: Bluetooth connection.	
Calling without a mobile phone. Keyword: calling with Personal eSIM.	Personal eSIM. Keyword: Personal eSIM.	

Function	Connection mode	Icon on the control display
Exchanging data between mobile device and vehicle.	Wi-Fi. Keyword: vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Accessing Internet via the personal hotspot.	Wi-Fi via personal hotspot. Keyword: personal hotspot.	
Operate Apple CarPlay via iDrive and by voice commands. Keyword: Apple CarPlay preparation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi. Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Operate Android Auto via iDrive and by voice control. Keyword: Android Auto preparation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi. Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Playing music from a USB device. Keyword: audio.	USB. Keyword: USB connection. For further information: USB port, see page 291.	

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General

BMW recommends carrying out the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

Safety information

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves and other road users, for example, by the following actions:

- Activation of standby state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Operating requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- Mobile reception.
- A consent for the transmission of the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

  For further information:

  Data protection, see page 72.

Search for an upgrade

Operating requirement

The standby state must be turned on to search for a Remote Software Upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

Manual search

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Download of an upgrade

Automatic download

If available, the data for a Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle. No consent to download is required.

Via the My BMW app

If an upgrade is available, information about the new software version is displayed in the My BMW app.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for example via an existing Wi-Fi connection.

The data can then be transferred from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for example in areas with limited mobile network availability.

You do not need to be in the vehicle to download the data to a mobile device.

1. Download the upgrade in the My BMW app to the smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the My BMW app.
3. The smartphone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.

   The data transfer of the upgrade from the mobile device to the vehicle takes place both while driving and when stationary. Depending on the data volume of the upgrade, it may be necessary to drive the vehicle to complete the transmission.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

For further information:

For information on connecting mobile devices with the vehicle, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Release notes

General

The release notes describe the updates included in the Remote Software Upgrade. The version information can be shown on the control display while downloading and following successful completion of the installation.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. ▷ Display currently installed version:

   "Installed version:"

   ▷ Display new available version:

   "Info on version"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Display in the ConnectedDrive customer portal on the Internet:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Installing the upgrade

General

- ▷ Installing the Remote Software Upgrade may cause software modifications not made by the vehicle manufacturer to be deleted, such as increases in performance.
- ▷ Modifications to the on-board power supply of the vehicle, for example to control units that have not been made by the manufacturer of the vehicle, can cause the installation to malfunction.
- ▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.

- Installation can take around 20 minutes.
- Installation cannot be interrupted.
- The vehicle cannot be used during installation.
- You may leave the vehicle during installation.

Prerequisites for the installation

- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.
- The outside temperature is above -10 °C, 14 °F.
- The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- The hazard warning lights are switched off.
- The selector lever position P is engaged.
- The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

Some prerequisites can be set automatically by the vehicle. Observe the information on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met, for example a sufficient vehicle battery charge state, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Look out for an offer to install, for example after driving for a long period.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, for example if the installation is terminated.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Closing the luggage compartment.
- Remove devices that consume energy, for example mobile phone.
- Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
- The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle when giving permission for installation.
- Switch off the exterior lights.
- Remove the devices connected to the socket for on-board diagnosis.

Install immediately

The upgrade can be installed immediately when all prerequisites have been met.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Installing with timer

At the end of the journey, a timer can be used to install the upgrade automatically at a configured time, for example, during the night. It may make sense to install later to meet functional requirements, such as a sufficiently cooled engine.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. Select the desired settings.

The installation starts automatically when:

- All prerequisites for the installation have been established correctly.
- All prerequisites continue to be met at the time of installation.

The timer is turned off when the drive-ready state is turned on.

Install via the My BMW app

Once all the preparations have been completed and all the requirements have been met,

installation of the upgrade can also be started with a parked vehicle via the My BMW app. Installation of the upgrade can be started and carried out remotely.

Follow the instructions in the My BMW app.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, many of the functions are temporarily unavailable, for example:

- Hazard warning lights.
- Central locking system and, if applicable, Comfort Access.
- Side lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency call.
- Window lifters.
- Glass sunroof.
- Fuel filler flap lock.
- Operating the tailgate or boot lid.

The driver's door can be unlocked and locked from outside with the integrated key.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Purchased services, e.g. Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services, are automatically reactivated during your next drive.

After an extended stationary period, charge the vehicle battery with an extended drive.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the My BMW app.

If the malfunction cannot be rectified, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the contents of the printed Owner's Handbook are up to date.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Personal settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers various services which require data to be transferred to BMW or a service provider.

General

Data transfer can be deactivated for some services. If data transfer has been deactivated for a service, then that service cannot be used.

Settings

Data transfer can be configured individually in various stages or for individual services.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on use, the vehicle stores personal data such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- BMW IDs or driver profiles.
- Saved radio stations.
- Stored shortcuts.
- Navigation, for example saved destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for example, favourites, cookies.
- Office data, for example voice memos.
- Login accounts.
- Digital keys.

It may take up to 15 minutes in total to delete data. The vehicle is also removed from the My BMW App and the ConnectedDrive customer portal so that remote functions can no longer be used.

Operating requirements

- Data can only be deleted with the vehicle at a standstill.
- The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Deleting data

Personal data in the vehicle is deleted when the vehicle is reset to its factory settings.

For further information:

Reset vehicle data, see page 73.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Resetting vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when drive-ready state is switched off. The data can only be deleted with the vehicle at a standstill. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

If synchronisation of settings has been activated for a BMW ID in the vehicle, the personal settings are retained in the BMW Cloud.

BMW ID/driver profiles

Principle

In ConnectedDrive countries, the BMW ID is the personal login for all relevant offers for the BMW brand. The BMW ID can be used in the vehicle to store and activate personal vehicle settings.

In non-ConnectedDrive countries, the personal vehicle settings can be stored in driver profiles.

If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can use their own BMW ID in the vehicle. If a BMW ID is activated, the stored settings for this are applied to the vehicle.

General

The BMW ID must be registered once. A BMW ID can be registered via the My BMW app, in the ConnectedDrive Portal or at the authorised Service Partner.

A driver profile is created in the vehicle.

Many of the settings that are stored for a BMW ID in the vehicle can be synchronised with the BMW Cloud. This makes these settings available in any vehicle where the same BMW ID is used to log in.

The vehicle can store three BMW IDs or three driver profiles.

Driver recognition enables a BMW ID or driver profile to be activated as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. For this, a vehicle key or a digital key must be linked to the BMW ID or the driver profile. After unlocking, the BMW ID or driver profile can be changed.

If no BMW ID or driver profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle is in the guest profile.

Operating requirements

For a BMW ID to be created, changed, deleted or edited, the vehicle must be at a standstill.

The login in the vehicle with a BMW ID and synchronisation with the BMW Cloud are only possible when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

Welcome window

After unlocking the vehicle, a Welcome window is shown on the control display. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisite:

- The vehicle does not have a stored BMW ID or driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. An option to add a BMW ID or create a driver profile is offered.
- The vehicle key or the digital key has not been assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. The stored BMW IDs or the stored driver profiles are offered for selection. Additionally, it is possible to add a new BMW ID or create a new driver profile.
- A BMW ID or a driver profile has not been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key :

The welcome is personalised, the stored settings are activated. The BMW ID or the driver profile can be changed.

As soon as the drive-ready state is turned on or the control display is tapped outside of the welcome window, the welcome will be hidden.

Adding the BMW ID

1. Tap the icon for the BMW ID or the personal image in the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3. Scan the displayed QR code with a smartphone.
4. Follow the instructions on the smartphone.
   - ▷ If the My BMW app is installed on the smartphone and the BMW ID is stored, the BMW ID is automatically transferred to the vehicle.
   - ▷ If there is no BMW ID available yet, a new BMW ID can be registered.
5. Select whether further settings should be made, for example, to define the desired driver recognition.

   In order to define driver recognition, the corresponding vehicle key or the corresponding digital key must be located in the vehicle.

   Driver recognition can be defined or changed in the settings at a later point in time.
6. Make further settings if necessary.

Alternatively, the BMW ID can be registered by the authorised Service Partner and added to the vehicle. The BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display of the corresponding vehicle.

The vehicle is added to the user's My BMW app.

Confirming the BMW ID

If the BMW ID has been created by the authorised Service Partner and added to the vehicle, the BMW ID must then be confirmed in the vehicle:

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Scan the QR code shown.
3. Follow the instructions on your smartphone.

It may be necessary to log in again with the BMW ID.

The icon is displayed in the status bar and indicates a new login procedure.

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Scan the QR code shown.

A new login procedure is performed. As soon as login is complete, all functions are available again.

My BMW App

If a BMW ID has been added to a vehicle, the vehicle is automatically added to the My BMW App. In the My BMW app, it is possible to benefit from various functions and adjust settings such as management of users.

Alternatively, a vehicle can be added to the My BMW app by the authorised Service Partner. In this case, the BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display of the corresponding vehicle.

In rare cases, the use of My BMW App functions for this vehicle may be restricted. A further note is shown on the control display.

Creating a driver profile

Driver profiles can be created in countries where BMW ConnectedDrive is not available.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add driver profile"
3. Enter the name for the driver profile.
4. Select the desired setting:

   "Transfer settings"

If the vehicle is using the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.

Main user

The main user is the person who first enters their BMW ID into the vehicle and the vehicle into the My BMW App. Alternatively, the main user can be specified by the authorised Service Partner.

The main user has access to the following settings, for example:

- Removing BMW IDs stored in the vehicle.
- Transferring the role of the main user to another BMW ID.
- Make vehicle-wide privacy settings.
- Creation of the digital master key.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page 91.

Automatic driver recognition

If driver recognition has been defined, automatic activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is triggered by the following activities:

- By unlocking the vehicle using the assigned vehicle key button.
- By unlocking the vehicle using a door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried.
- By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried. Depending on the national-market version, it may not be possible to recognise the digital key.

If there are several vehicle keys or digital keys in the vicinity of the vehicle, the activation of the BMW ID or the driver profile takes place according to the following priority:

- The key that unlocks the vehicle triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.

  The guest profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked using a key that is not assigned to a BMW ID or driver profile.
- If a vehicle key and a digital key are detected at the same time, the digital key triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.
- If another key is detected on the driver's door after activating the BMW ID or the driver profile, the BMW ID or the driver profile of the last key detected is activated.

  If no BMW ID and no driver profile are assigned to this key, the guest profile is activated.

Synchronisation of settings

If synchronisation is switched on, settings are continuously synchronised from the following areas, for example:

- BMW ID, e.g. profile picture.
- Navigation, e.g. last destinations, home address or map settings.
- Media, e.g. favourites or stored radio stations.
- iDrive, e.g. main menu configuration, language or units.
- Personal assistant, e.g. suggestions or activation word.
- Exterior lights, e.g. one-touch signalling and home lights.

Settings from the following areas are only synchronised when you log in for the first time:

- Seating and climate comfort, e.g. driver's seat position or temperature setting.
- Privacy menu.

Selecting the BMW ID/driver profile

If it was not possible to recognise the BMW ID or driver profile when unlocking the vehicle, the BMW ID or driver profile is selected on the welcome window.

The BMW ID or driver profile can be changed at any time via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
4. If necessary, enter the PIN.

The BMW ID or the driver profile are activated, the stored settings are loaded.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated and changed by anyone.

The guest profile is automatically active in the following cases:

- ▷ A BMW ID has not yet been added or a driver profile has not yet been created.
- ▷ No BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply to the guest profile:

- ▷ Certain functions are not available, for example, navigation functions or saving favourites.
- ▷ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a driver detection to the guest profile.
- ▷ In ConnectedDrive countries, the synchronisation with the BMW Cloud is not possible.

The guest profile is selected in the welcome window or via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. "Continue as guest"

Deleting the BMW ID/driver profile

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Manage BMW IDs"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Tap the icon of the desired BMW ID or the desired driver profile.

Removing a BMW ID from the vehicle causes the vehicle to be removed from the My BMW app. If the BMW ID has been synchronised with the BMW Cloud, the data stored in the BMW Cloud is retained after the BMW ID is deleted. If the currently active BMW ID is removed, the guest profile is activated.

Removing a vehicle from the My BMW app removes the corresponding BMW ID from the vehicle. If the BMW ID was synchronised with the BMW Cloud, the BMW ID data stored on the BMW Cloud will be retained.

If the vehicle is removed from the main user's My BMW app, it will also be removed from the other users' My BMW apps. The corresponding BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

If the vehicle is reset to the factory settings, the vehicle is removed from all users' My BMW apps and all BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key that is assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile can be used to view or change the stored personal settings.

Before a vehicle key is transferred to other persons, any assigned driver detection should be cancelled. Changes to the driver detection can be made in the settings of the BMW ID or the driver profile.

The BMW Digital Key provides the option to transfer a digital key to permit other persons the use of your own vehicle.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page 91.

Settings

General

Settings added when adding a BMW ID or creating a driver profile can be changed.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"

The following settings are available for the BMW ID:

- The type of driver detection.
- The profile picture.
- The synchronisation with the BMW Cloud.
- The personal salutation.

The following settings are available for the driver profile:

- The type of driver detection.
- The profile picture.
- The profile name.

Selecting a profile picture

The profile picture can be selected from the predefined profile pictures.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"
3. "Manage profile picture"
4. "Select profile picture"

For a BMW ID, the personal profile picture can be taken from the profile in the My BMW app. This requires that the synchronisation with the BMW Cloud is activated in the settings. After the profile picture from the My BMW app has been applied, a selection from the predefined pictures is only possible if the profile picture in the My BMW app is deleted or synchronisation is deactivated.

System limits

A clear driver detection via the vehicle key or the digital key may not always be possible, for example in the following cases:

- If there is a change of driver without the vehicle being locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys with an assigned BMW ID or driver profile are located in the outer area on the driver's side of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle was unlocked from the My BMW app.

The use of personal settings that are stored for a BMW ID in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, there may be stored settings for a system that is not available in other vehicles, or only in an incompatible version.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Vehicle key

General

The delivery specification includes two vehicle keys, each containing an integrated key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance requirement, the service data is saved in the vehicle key.

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, take it with you whenever you exit the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cells can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Overview

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Pre-conditioning, see page 287.
	Depending on the equipment: Open/close the luggage compartment. Open the luggage compartment.
	Home lights, see page 174.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If a BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the lost vehicle key, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

Replacing the battery

NOTICE

Unsuitable batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of material damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.
2. Position the integrated key under the battery compartment lid, arrow 1, and pry off the lid by moving the lever of the integrated key, arrow 2.

3. Use a pointed object to press the battery in the direction of the arrow and lift it out.

4. Insert a type CR 2032 3V battery with the positive terminal facing up.
5. Press the cover back into position and close it.
6. Insert the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Dispose of old batteries with an authorised Service Partner, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, or hand them in to an authorised collection point.

Batteries contain harmful substances. It is prohibited by law to dispose of them together with household waste.

Integrated key

General

The integrated key enables the vehicle to be unlocked and locked manually.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key fits the glove compartment.

Depending on the model and equipment, the key switch for the front passenger airbag can be operated with the integrated key.

Safety information

WARNING

With some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside requires specific knowledge.

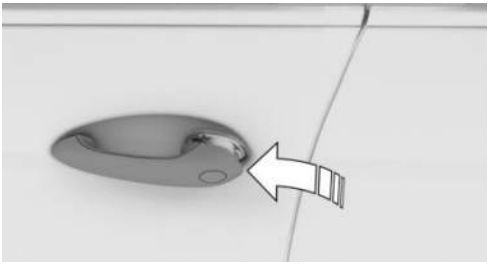
There is a risk of severe or fatal injury if persons or animals remain in the vehicle for extended periods of time, which exposes them to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are persons or animals inside. Do not leave babies, toddlers, or animals alone in the vehicle.

Removing the integrated key

Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

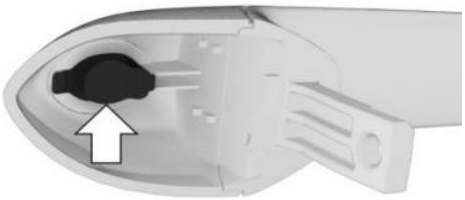
Unlocking the vehicle manually

1. With one hand, pull the driver's door handle outwards and hold it.

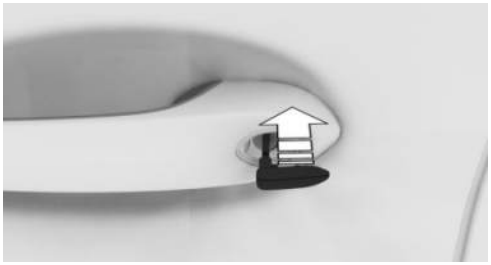


2. Slide one finger of your other hand under the cover cap from behind and press the cover outwards.

   Support the cover cap with your thumb to stop it falling out of the door handle.



3. Remove the cover cap.
4. Unlock the door by turning the door lock anti-clockwise using the integrated key.



5. Open the driver's door.
6. Press the central locking system button to unlock the other doors.

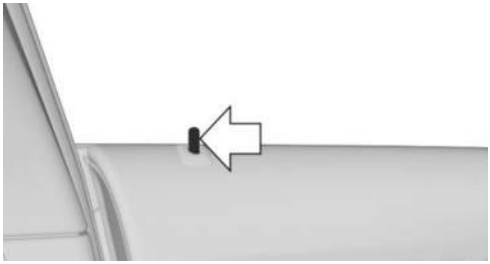
   If the vehicle is de-energised: pull the door openers of the other doors from the inside.

Manually locking the vehicle

General

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key into the vehicle.

Overview



Locking button for manually locking the driver's door.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close all doors.
2. Get into the vehicle at the passenger's side and close the front passenger door.
3. Press the central locking system button to lock all the doors.

   If the vehicle is de-energised: press down the door pins of all doors except the front passenger door.
4. Exit the vehicle through the front passenger door.
5. Press down the door pin of the front passenger door and close the front passenger door.
6. Pull the door handles of the doors to check that they are locked. Repeat the process if necessary.

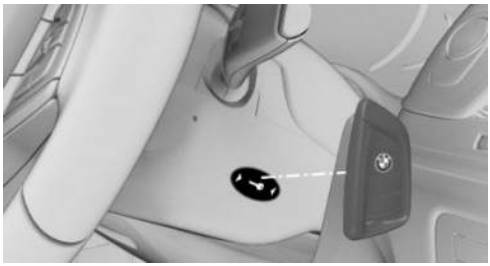
Alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock, the activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened.

In this case, use the emergency detection of the vehicle key to switch off the alarm.

If the vehicle is locked with the integrated key via the door lock, the alarm system is not activated.

Emergency detection of the vehicle key



Drive-ready state cannot be switched on if the vehicle key is not detected.

If this happens, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the rear side of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. ▷ If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

   ▷ If the vehicle key is not detected:

   Slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the vehicle key in some circumstances, including the following:

- ▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the vehicle key by metallic objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects.

- Disruption of the radio link by mobile phones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- Interference with the radio transmission caused by the charging process of mobile devices, for example a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging tray.

  Place the vehicle key somewhere else.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key. Use the emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on the drive-ready state.

Access to vehicle interior

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a danger of injury. Carry the vehicle key with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

With some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside requires specific knowledge.

There is a risk of severe or fatal injury if persons or animals remain in the vehicle for extended periods of time, which exposes them to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are persons or animals inside. Do not leave babies, toddlers, or animals alone in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves and other road users, for example, by the following actions:

- Activation of standby state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Actions during unlocking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when unlocking the vehicle:

- Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- The unlocking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

The following functions are also carried out:

- If a BMW ID or driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this BMW ID or driver profile will be activated.
- The interior lights are switched on unless they were switched off manually.
- Depending on the equipment, folded exterior mirrors are folded out.

If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button in the vehicle interior, they are not folded out when the vehicle is unlocked.

- The anti-theft security system is switched off.
- The alarm system is switched off.

For further information:

- Settings, see page 95.
- Welcome light, see page 173.
- BMW ID/driver profiles, see page 73.

Actions during locking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when the vehicle is locked:

- The locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors can be folded in automatically during locking. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

The following functions are carried out:

- All the doors, the luggage compartment and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- The anti-theft security system is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the locking buttons or the door handles.
- The alarm system is switched on.

If drive-ready state is still switched on when locking, the vehicle horn sounds twice. If this happens, switch off drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

For further information:

Settings, see page 95.

With the vehicle key

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap have been unlocked because of the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2.  Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

On the door handle

Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to use the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

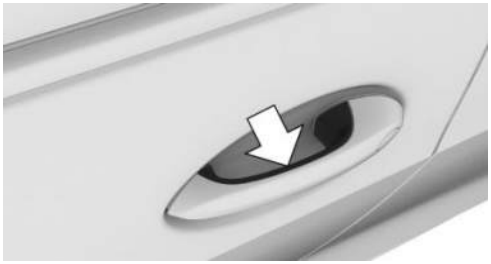
General

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Operating requirements

- Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.
- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be located outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the doors.
- After locking, approx. 2 seconds must elapse before unlocking is possible.

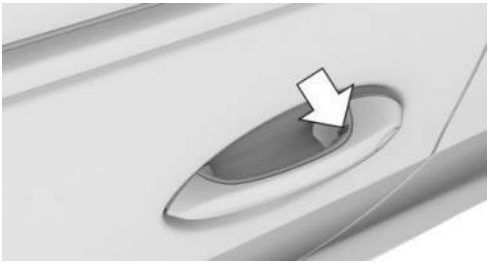
Unlocking the vehicle



Fully grasp the handle of a door.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Touch the grooved surface on the door handle of a closed door with a finger for approximately 1 second, without gripping the door handle.



Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may affect the ability of the door handles to detect a lock request.

If a fault occurs, unlock and lock the vehicle with the buttons on the vehicle key or with the integrated key.

Touchless unlocking/locking of the vehicle

Principle

The vehicle is unlocked when the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key.

If the driver moves away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is locked.

General

The function is available with Comfort Access.

The vehicle is unlocked when an authorised vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft around the side and rear of the vehicle.

The vehicle is locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 3 m, 9 ft around the side and rear of the vehicle.

If the vehicle key remains within the unlocking zone without moving for a prolonged period of time, the vehicle is locked automatically.

If a person is detected on the front passenger seat when locking, and if the front passenger's seat belt is in the seat belt buckle when locking:

- The vehicle is locked, but not protected against theft.
- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Actions during unlocking

If the settings specify that only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked, note the following:

The driver's door and fuel filler flap will only unlock when the driver is located within the unlocking zone for the driver's door.

Settings, see page 95.

Operating requirements

- Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.
- Unlocking: When entering the unlocking zone, the doors and luggage compartment must be closed.

- Locking: When leaving the locking zone, the doors and luggage compartment must be closed.
- Automatic unlocking and locking must be activated in the settings.
- Drive-ready state must be switched off.
- For contactless locking of the vehicle, no second vehicle key may be within a radius of 6 m, approx. 18 ft around the vehicle.
- If the vehicle has been in rest state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking is not possible until the vehicle has been driven.

For further information:

Settings, see page 95.

With the Key Card

Principle

The Key Card is a chip card on which a digital key is installed. The key card can be used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

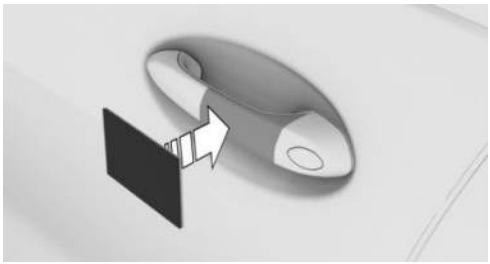
For further information:

Key Card, see page 90.

General

The Key Card is available with Comfort Access.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the activated Key Card directly and centrally up against the door handle on the driver's door.

When locking the vehicle with the Key Card, make sure that all doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the process.

With the BMW Digital Key

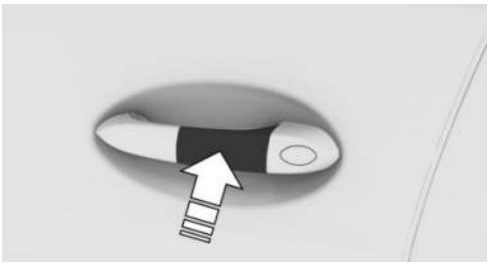
Principle

Depending on the national-market version and equipment, a digital key can be installed on a compatible smartphone and used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

For further information:

BMW Digital Key, see page 91.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the NFC aerial of the smartphone directly and centrally up against the door handle on the driver's door. The position of the NFC antenna will depend on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Frequently Asked Questions

What measures can be taken to enable a vehicle to be opened if the vehicle key has accidentally been locked inside the vehicle?

- The Remote Services of the app can be used to lock and unlock a vehicle, for example.

This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the app must be installed on a smartphone.

- Unlocking of the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive call centre.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract.

Access to the luggage compartment

General

The luggage compartment may not open when the vehicle is in Valet Parking mode.

For further information:

Valet parking mode, see page 95.

Safety information

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the boot lid is kept clear.

WARNING

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a danger of injury and material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the boot lid is kept clear.

With the vehicle key

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the luggage compartment.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the following settings are possible:

- Unlocking the luggage compartment with the vehicle key also unlocks the doors.
- The vehicle must be unlocked before unlocking the luggage compartment with the vehicle key.

Operating requirements

To open the luggage compartment with the vehicle key, the trailer socket must not be occupied.

Selector lever position P must be engaged to open the luggage compartment with the vehicle key.

Opening with the vehicle key must be activated in the settings.

For further information:

Settings, see page 95.

Opening the luggage compartment

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

Closing the luggage compartment

Depending on vehicle equipment: Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the luggage compartment is closed.

Releasing the button stops the movement.

If the doors were not unlocked, the luggage compartment is locked again as soon as it closes.

On the luggage compartment

General

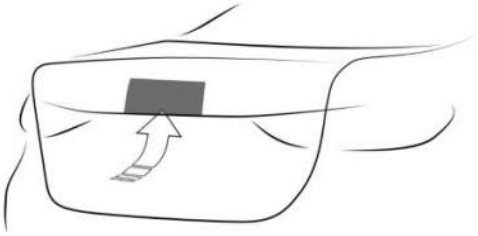
With Comfort Access, the luggage compartment can be accessed without activating the vehicle key.

The key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.

Opening the luggage compartment



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the luggage compartment.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the luggage compartment.

  Locked doors are not unlocked.

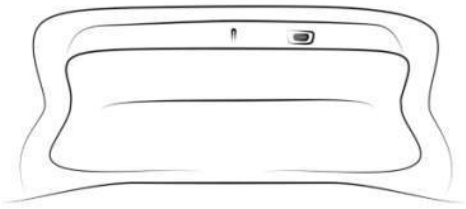
Closing the luggage compartment manually

Pull the luggage compartment down using the recessed handles.

Depending on vehicle equipment: Press the button on the luggage compartment.

The vehicle is locked after the luggage compartment has been closed. For this to happen, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the luggage compartment.

Closing the luggage compartment automatically



- Press the button on the luggage compartment.
- Press the button on the luggage compartment.

  The vehicle is locked after the luggage compartment has been closed. For this to happen, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the luggage compartment.

In the vehicle interior

Operating requirements

In order to be able to open the luggage compartment with the button in the vehicle interior, the trailer socket must not be occupied.

In order to be able to close the luggage compartment with the button in the vehicle interior, the vehicle key or the digital key must be located in the vehicle interior.

Opening the luggage compartment

Press the button in the driver's door.

Closing the luggage compartment

Depending on the equipment:

Pull and hold the button in the driver's door.

Cancelling the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- If the vehicle begins to move.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the luggage compartment. Pressing it again closes the luggage compartment again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the luggage compartment. Pressing it again closes the luggage compartment again.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key.

  Pressing the button again continues the opening process.

  Pressing and holding the button again closes the luggage compartment again.
- By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again resumes the opening procedure.

Cancelling the closing operation

The closing operation is interrupted in the following situations:

- When driving off suddenly.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the luggage compartment. Pressing it again opens the luggage compartment again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the luggage compartment. Pressing it again opens the luggage compartment again.
- By releasing the button on the vehicle key.

  Pressing the button again opens the luggage compartment again.

  Pressing and holding it again resumes the closing operation.
- By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling and holding the button again resumes the closing operation.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment contactlessly

Principle

Contactless opening of the luggage compartment is possible when carrying the vehicle key on your person. If automatic tailgate operation is installed, the luggage compartment can also be closed contactlessly.

Sensors detect a defined foot movement in the central rear area, and the luggage compartment is opened or closed.

General

The availability of the function depends on the equipment and national-market version.

If the vehicle key is within the sensor range, the luggage compartment may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor range extends to approximately 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.

If you open the luggage compartment contactlessly, locked doors will not be unlocked.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

When opening the luggage compartment contactlessly, there is a risk of touching vehicle parts, for example, the hot exhaust system. There is a danger of injury. Make sure you are standing securely as you move your foot, and do not touch the vehicle.

Operating requirements

- The vehicle must be equipped with the automatic tailgate in order to close the luggage compartment contactlessly.
- Selector lever position P must be engaged.
- Contactless opening and closing of the luggage compartment must be activated in the settings.

Depending on the equipment:

- The trailer socket must not be occupied.

For further information:

Settings, see page 95.

Opening the luggage compartment

1. To open the luggage compartment contactlessly, stand centrally behind the vehicle while carrying the vehicle key, approximately one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Kick your foot as far as possible underneath the vehicle and immediately pull it back. A leg must move across the range of both sensors for these movements.

Before the luggage compartment opens, the hazard warning lights will flash.

Moving the foot again will stop the opening procedure. The subsequent foot movement will close the luggage compartment again.

Closing the luggage compartment

Perform the foot movement for opening the luggage compartment.

The hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving the foot again will stop the closing operation. The subsequent foot movement will open the luggage compartment again.

System limits

Detection of foot movement may be restricted by the following external circumstances:

- Ice, snow or slush on the rear of the vehicle.
- Dirt or road salt on the rear of the vehicle.

Movement in the vicinity of the sensors may cause the luggage compartment to open unintentionally, for example, if water flows underneath the vehicle during cleaning, in heavy rain or as a result of moving brushes in a car wash. To prevent the luggage compartment from opening unintentionally, make sure that the vehicle key is far enough away from the rear of the vehicle.

Depending on the equipment: objects mounted on a trailer tow hitch cannot be detected if the trailer socket is not plugged in.

Luggage compartment emergency release

The availability of the luggage compartment emergency release depends on the vehicle equipment.

Pull the handle in the luggage compartment.

The luggage compartment is unlocked.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical fault, operate the unlocked boot lid manually; do so slowly and without sudden movements.

Only apply light pressure to the boot lid to fully close it. The closing operation is then performed automatically.

Key Card

Principle

The Key Card can be used to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

General

The availability of the Key Card depends on the equipment and national-market version.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

When you exit the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you, as it can be used to start the vehicle when activated. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card may be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Do not place the Key Card in the wireless charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Activating/deactivating the Key Card in the vehicle

General

If BMW Digital Key is enabled for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card will remain in the list of registered digital keys.

Operating requirement

To activate and deactivate the Key Card, there must be a vehicle key in the vehicle.

Activating the Key Card

1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place the Key Card in the middle of the smartphone tray.
3. Follow instructions on the control display.

Deactivating the Key Card

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Key Card"
6. "Deactivate Key Card"

A deactivated Key Card will remain in the list of registered digital keys.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked with the activated Key Card.

For further information:

Access to the vehicle interior, see page 82.

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place the activated Key Card in the middle of the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

After turning on the drive-ready state, the Key Card can be taken out of the storage tray.

Malfunction

Objects between the smartphone tray and the Key Card, for example, a purse/wallet or smartphone case, may prevent the vehicle from detecting the Key Card.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key allows you to use digital keys to lock, unlock and start the vehicle.

General

The availability and scope of functions of BMW Digital Key depend on the equipment and national-market version.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible end devices.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. It is possible to check in the My BMW App whether the smartphone and the vehicle are compatible and which functions are supported.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, always carry a vehicle key or the activated Key Card with you too. This will mean that you can still access the vehicle even if the smartphone is not working. It is also useful to keep the vehicle key or Key Card on your person if the vehicle has to be handed over to another person. The vehicle key or Key Card can then be handed over, instead of the smartphone.

Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

For further information:

- BMW ID/driver profiles, see page 73.
- Key Card, see page 90.
- www.bmw.com/digitalkey

Operating requirements

- The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key.
- The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the registered keeper.
- The smartphone battery is sufficiently charged. The minimum battery charge required depends on the smartphone in question.
- Bluetooth must be enabled on the smartphone for contactless unlocking and locking with the digital key.

Enabling the main digital key

The registered keeper's smartphone is enabled as the main digital key in the vehicle. To do so, the registered keeper must provide proof of authorisation for their vehicle.

Proof of authorisation can be initiated via the My BMW app or the activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, for example, in the Wallet app.

Both vehicle keys must be in the vehicle during enabling.

Follow the activation instructions in the Digital Key menu, in the app or on the control display.

Sharing digital keys

General

Digital Key enables digital keys to be shared with other people. This option is provided via the smartphone enabled as the main digital key. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Passing on authorisation

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for example in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with a person, this person receives an invitation. If the invitation is accepted, the digital key is activated on the recipient's smartphone.

Limiting the range of functions

Certain functions of the digital key can be limited before handing it over. For example, restrictions on driving stability control systems can be suppressed and engine performance can be reduced before the digital key is given to a beginner driver. Further information can be found on the ConnectedDrive portal and in the My BMW App.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, authentication may be required for security reasons.

An authorised vehicle key, the main digital key or another method can be used to perform the authentication. Corresponding information is displayed for your attention on the smartphone or control display.

Deleting digital keys

General

Deleted digital keys are removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deleting the digital master key

The digital master key can be deleted from the smartphone or via iDrive.

The deletion of the digital master key is completed immediately.

Deleting a shared key

Shared keys can be deleted via the smartphone associated with the digital main key, via the smartphone associated with the key to be deleted or via iDrive.

Deletion using the smartphone associated with the main digital key is only carried out when the vehicle is being used with a key other than the one to be deleted.

Deletion via the smartphone associated with the key to be deleted or via iDrive will take place immediately.

Deletion in iDrive

To enable a digital key to be deleted via iDrive, there must be an authorised vehicle key in the

vehicle or the digital main key must be in the smartphone tray.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. Select a digital key as necessary.
6. Delete the Digital Key.

Resetting the function

To reset BMW Digital Key function, there must be an authorised vehicle key in the vehicle.

All digital keys, including the main key, are deleted when the BMW Digital Key function is reset. The digital key of the Key Card is retained and deactivated.

Following the reset, it will no longer be possible to lock, unlock or start the vehicle with a digital key.

The main digital key must be enabled again in order to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked using the door handle.

For further information:

Access to the vehicle interior, see page 82.

Switching on drive-ready state

Using the smartphone tray

1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place the smartphone in the middle of the smartphone tray.

   Make sure that the display is pointing upwards.
3. Close the cover of the smartphone tray.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to switch on the drive-ready state.

Selling the smartphone

Delete all digital keys from the smartphone before selling it. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Changing smartphones

In order to be able to use a new smartphone as a digital main key, the new smartphone must be activated in accordance with the description for the digital main key. The previous main key is deleted when the new smartphone is activated.

Selling the vehicle

Before selling a vehicle, reset the digital key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current registered keeper.

If the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle

are deleted. The digital key of the Key Card is retained and deactivated.

System limits

With a digital key, it is not possible to switch off the interior movement sensor and the tilt alarm sensor of the alarm system.

For further information:

Alarm system, see page 97.

Malfunction

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the digital key in some circumstances, including the following:

- The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by an unsuitable smartphone cover.
- There are objects between the smartphone and its cover, for example a card with a chip or the Key Card.
- Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the smartphone due to buildings or metal objects.

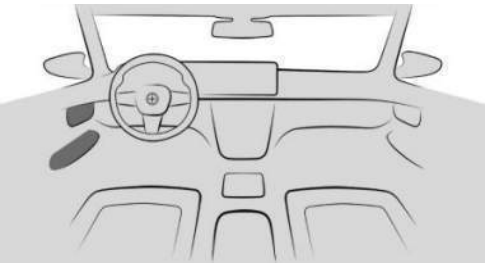
Central locking system buttons

General

The vehicle is automatically locked when moving off.

If an accident of appropriate severity occurs, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning lights and the interior lights illuminate.

Overview



The central locking system buttons are located on the front door.

Lock.

Unlock.

Locking the vehicle

With the front doors closed, press the button on the driver's door or front passenger door.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Locking does not activate the vehicle's anti-theft protection system.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button in the driver's door or front passenger door.

Opening the door

- 

  Press the button to unlock all the doors together.

  Pull the door handle above the armrest.
- Pull the door handle on the door being opened. The other doors remain locked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Valet parking mode

Principle

The control display is disabled in valet parking mode.

This mode can be used, for example, if the vehicle is to be handed over to a parking service.

General

Depending on the national-market version, the valet parking mode may not be available.

Valet parking mode includes the following restrictions:

- Changes to the vehicle settings via iDrive are not possible.
- Settings stored in a BMW ID or a guest profile cannot be changed.
- Personal data cannot be displayed.
- The audio system is muted and the possible volume of the audio system is limited.
- The Dynamic Stability Control cannot be deactivated.
- The availability of certain settings of the drive modes is restricted.

For further information:

BMW ID/driver profiles, see page 73.

Operating requirement

The driver has registered in the vehicle with a BMW ID.

Activating valet parking mode

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"
5. "Lock tailgate"

   The luggage compartment is locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
6. If necessary, "PIN"

   If the active BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN, create a PIN. The PIN is needed to deactivate the valet parking mode.
7. If necessary, enter the PIN.
8. "Activate valet parking mode"

Deactivating valet parking mode

1. Select the desired BMW ID on the lock screen.
2. ▷ Enter the assigned PIN for the BMW ID.

   If the PIN was forgotten: enter access data for the BMW ID.

   ▷ If the selected BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN: enter access data for the BMW ID.

Settings

General

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for opening and closing.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Unlock"
6. Select the desired setting:

   ▷ "Driver's door only"

   Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

   ▷ "All doors"

   The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Touchless unlocking/locking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automatic unlocking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Unlock doors at end of journey"
   - ▷ "Unlock doors when in P"

The locked vehicle is automatically unlocked after drive-ready state has been switched off or by engaging the selector lever position P.

Automatic locking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Lock after a short time"

The vehicle is automatically locked again after a short while if no doors are opened after unlocking.

Vehicle acknowledgement signals

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Flash on lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is acknowledged by two flashes, locking by one flash.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Sound on lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is acknowledged by two acoustic signals, locking by one acoustic signal.

Automatic folding of the mirrors

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock"

Luggage compartment

Luggage compartment and doors

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     Depending on vehicle equipment, the luggage compartment will be unlocked or opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     Depending on the equipment, the luggage compartment will be unlocked or opened and the doors are unlocked.
   - ▷ "Tailgate will only open if vehicle is already unlocked"

     The vehicle must be unlocked before the luggage compartment can be operated with the vehicle key.
   - ▷ "Lock tailgate button"

     Operation of the luggage compartment with the vehicle key is disabled.

Opening/closing the luggage compartment contactlessly

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting.

Closing the glass sunroof automatically

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Close roof automatically"

After locking, the open glass sunroof is automatically moved to the raised position in the event of rain or after six hours.

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system visually and acoustically signals when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle.

General

The alarm system responds to the following changes in a locked vehicle:

- Opening a door, the bonnet or the luggage compartment.
- Movement inside the vehicle interior.
- A change in the vehicle's angle of inclination, for example when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle away.
- An interruption in the battery voltage.
- Improper use of the diagnostic socket.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the on-board diagnostic socket.

The alarm system indicates these changes visually and audibly:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Optical alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning lights and, if applicable, the headlights.

To safeguard operation of the alarm system, do not modify the system.

Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system switches on as soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked manually from inside.

The alarm system is switched off as soon as the vehicle is unlocked.

Opening the doors when the alarm system is switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if it has been unlocked via the door lock using the integrated key.

Opening the luggage compartment with the alarm system turned on

The luggage compartment can be opened even when the alarm system is turned on.

After closing the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning lights flash once during closing.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- The indicator light flashes for approximately 10 seconds then switches to flashing every 2 seconds:

  The interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are not active because the doors, bonnet or tailgate are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  Once the remaining open access points have been closed, the interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are switched on.
- The indicator light flashes even though all accesses have been closed:

  Error in the alarm system.
- The indicator light goes out after the vehicle has been unlocked:

  This means that the vehicle is not being tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but for no longer than approximately 5 minutes:

  The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The vehicle's angle of inclination is monitored.

The alarm system responds, for example when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or tow the vehicle away.

Interior movement detector

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system responds when movement is detected in the vehicle interior.

To ensure perfect functioning, the windows and glass sunroof must be closed.

Avoiding false warnings

General

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector may trigger an alarm even though no unauthorised activity is taking place.

Situations where false warnings may occur:

- In washing bays or conveyor car washes.
- In two-level garages.
- When transporting the vehicle via motorail, car ferry or trailer.
- When there are pets in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after starting to refuel.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector can be switched off for such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

Within 30 seconds of locking the vehicle, press the button on the vehicle key.

The indicator light illuminates for approximately 2 seconds and then flashes again.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Ending the alarm

Unlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, drive-ready state must then be turned on via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Window

General

If a window is often opened in the same location, this task can be carried out by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. Useful, for example, if the same multi-storey car park is frequently used.

For further information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, see page 61.

Safety information

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the windows are operated. There is a danger of injury and material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the windows is kept clear.

With the vehicle key

Opening windows

Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after unlocking.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key remains pressed.

Close windows

Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after locking.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key remains pressed.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

On the door handle

Principle

The windows can be closed via the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

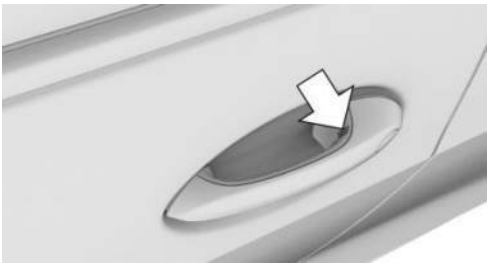
General

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.

Close windows



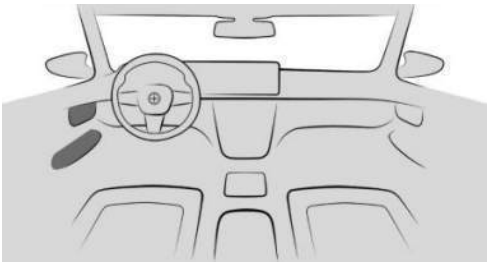
Touch the grooved surface on the door handle of a closed door with a finger and hold it there without gripping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

In the vehicle interior

Overview



Window lifters

Operating requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- For a short while after rest state has been established.

The vehicle key or a digital key must be located in the vehicle interior.

Opening windows

- Press the switch as far as the resistance point.

  The window opens for as long as the switch is held.
- Press the switch past the resistance point.

  The window is opened automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Close windows

- Pull the switch as far as the resistance point.

  The window closes for as long as the switch is held.
- Pull the switch past the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically. Pulling the switch again stops the movement.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General

If resistance or an obstruction is detected while a window is being closed, the closing process is interrupted.

Safety information

WARNING

Accessories on the windows, for example aerials, can impair the anti-trap mechanism. There is a danger of injury. Do not attach any accessories within the movement range of the windows.

Closing without an anti-trap mechanism

If an external hazard or ice prevents normal closure, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it in this position.

   The window is closed but with restricted anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force

exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approximately 4 seconds and hold it in this position.

   The window is closed without an anti-trap mechanism.

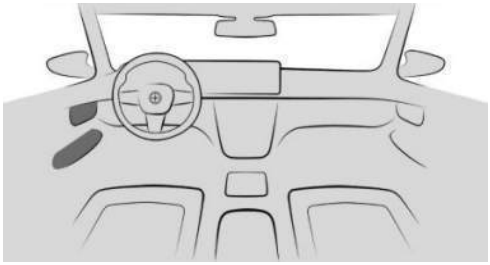
Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows with the switches in the rear, for example.

If an accident of appropriate severity occurs, the safety function is automatically switched off.

Overview



The safety switch is located in the driver's door.

Turning the safety functions on/off

To activate or deactivate the safety function, press the safety switch in the driver's door.

The LED in the button illuminates when the safety function is switched on.

Glass sunroof

Safety information

WARNING

Parts of the body may become trapped when the glass sunroof is operated. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the glass sunroof is kept clear.

With the vehicle key

Opening the glass sunroof

Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after unlocking.

The electric glass sunroof with sun protection is opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing the glass sunroof

Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after locking.

The electric glass sunroof with sun protection is closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

On the door handle

Principle

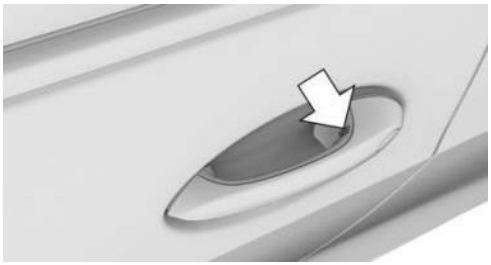
The glass sunroof can be closed with the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for example, in your trouser pocket.

Closing the glass sunroof



Touch the grooved surface on the outside door handle of a closed door with your finger and hold it there without gripping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

In the vehicle interior

Operating requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions:

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- For a short while after rest state has been established.

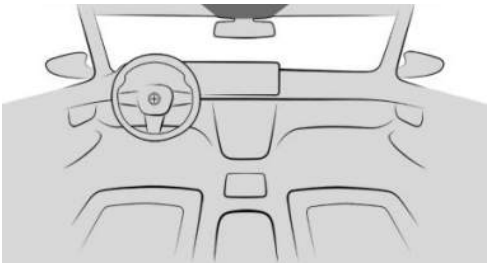
The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle interior.

General

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



To open/close the glass sunroof/sun protection.

Raising/closing the glass sunroof

Press the switch briefly up.

- The closed glass sunroof is raised and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The opened glass sunroof closes to the raised position. The sun protection does not move.

- The raised glass sunroof is closed.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately

- Slide the switch backwards as far as the resistance point and hold.

  The sun protection opens for as long as the switch is pressed. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof is opened.

- Slide the switch forwards as far as the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes for as long as the switch is held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun protection is closed.

- Slide the switch backwards beyond the resistance point.

  The sun protection is opened automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof is opened automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

- Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof is closed automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun protection is closed automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together

- Slide the switch back beyond the resistance point twice in quick succession.

  The glass sunroof and the sun protection open together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

- Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point twice in quick succession.

  The glass sunroof and the sun protection close together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Comfort position

In some models, wind noise levels inside the vehicle are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. On these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof as far as this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again in the vehicle interior opens the electric glass sunroof fully.

Closing the glass sunroof automatically

Principle

After locking, the open glass sunroof is automatically moved to the raised position in the event of rain or after six hours.

Operating requirement

- Rain must be able to reach the sensor field in the area of the interior mirror. The sensor field may be obscured by a car port or bridge, for example.
- Vehicle must be in rest state.
- The function must be activated in the settings.

  Settings, see page 95.

Malfunctions

The open glass sunroof is not moved to the raised position under the following circumstances:

- The glass sunroof is blocked.
- The anti-trap mechanism cannot be guaranteed.
- There is a system error, for example due to a temporary open circuit. In this case, initialising the glass sunroof can help.

An error message is shown on the control display. No further closure is attempted.

If rain detection is not possible due to the system, the open glass sunroof is immediately moved to the raised position. An error message is shown on the control display.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is being closed.

General

If resistance or an obstruction is detected while the glass sunroof is being closed, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position or when closing from the raised position.

Closing with no anti-trap mechanism from an open position

If there is danger from outside the vehicle or icing, for example, prevents normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Establish drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it in this position.

   The glass sunroof is closed with restricted anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.
4. Slide the switch forwards once again beyond the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes with no anti-trap mechanism. Ensure that the closing range is clear.

Closing with no anti-trap mechanism from a raised position

If an external hazard or ice prevents normal closure, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Establish drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it in this position.

Initialising after an open circuit

General

If a open circuit occurs while the glass sunroof is opening or closing, it may only have restricted functionality afterwards. In this case, initialising the system can help.

The system can be initialised if the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- The vehicle does not move until initialisation is complete.
- Drive-ready state is activated.
- The outside temperature is above 5 °C/41 °F.

During initialisation, the glass sunroof closes with no anti-trap mechanism.

Ensure that the closing range is clear.

Initialising the system

Press the switch up and hold until initialisation is complete:

Initialisation begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens, then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.
- In the closed position, the sun protection is initialized.

Initialisation is complete once the glass sunroof and sun visor have opened, then closed again.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Safe seating position

A seat position that suitably meets the needs of the passengers is essential for relaxed driving with minimum fatigue.

In an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Pay attention to the notes in the following chapters.

For further information:

- Seats, see page 106.
- Seat belts, see page 110.
- Head restraints, see page 113.
- Airbags, see page 182.

Seats

Safety information

WARNING

Setting the seat during a journey could cause the seat to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when at a standstill.

WARNING

If the backrest is angled too far back, the protective effect of the seat belt will no longer be guaranteed. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in the event of an accident. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Adjust the seat before starting the journey. Adjust the backrest to the most upright position possible, and do not change it during the journey.

WARNING

There is a pinch hazard when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the movement range of the seat is clear.

Manually adjustable seats

Overview

The levers for the seat settings are located at the front seats.

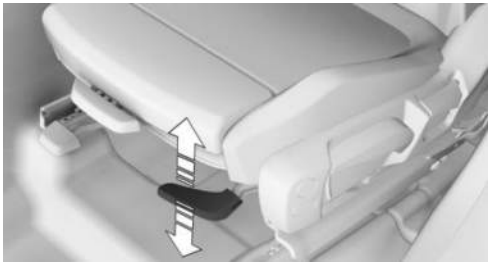
Adjusting the forward/back position

WARNING

If the seat is not locked, it could move unexpectedly during a journey. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. After making an adjustment, move the seat forwards and backwards slightly to ensure that it is properly engaged.

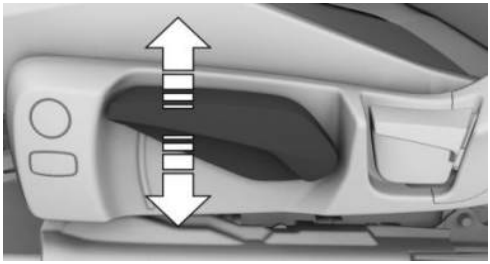
Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

Adjusting the seat angle



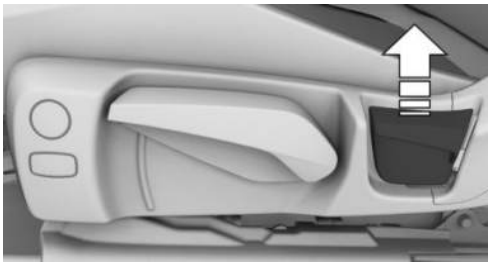
Pull the lever up or press the lever down repeatedly until the seat reaches the desired angle.

Adjusting the height



Pull the lever up or press the lever down repeatedly until the seat reaches the desired height.

Adjusting the backrest angle



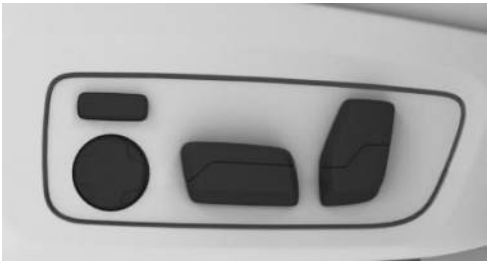
Pull the lever and add or remove pressure on the backrest as required.

Electrically adjustable seats

General

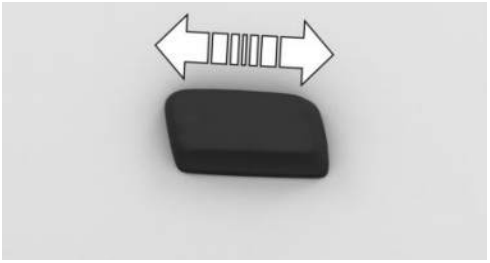
The current seat position can be saved using the memory function.

Overview



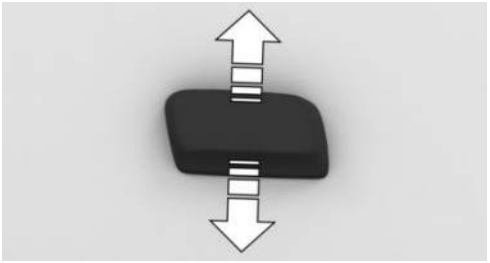
The switches for the seat settings are located at the front seats.

Adjusting the forward/back position



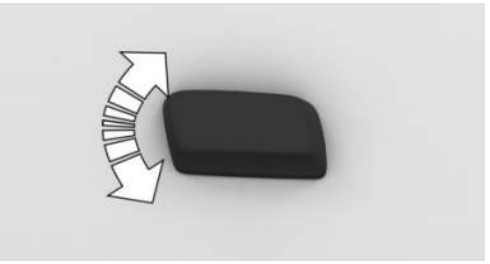
Press the switch forwards or backwards.

Adjusting the height



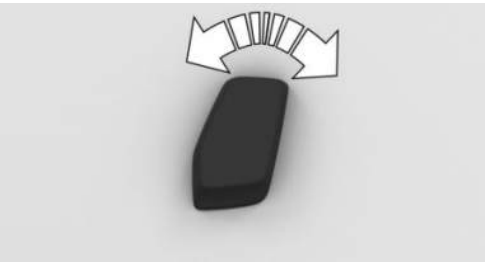
Press the switch up or down.

Adjusting the seat angle



Tilt the switch up or down.

Adjusting the backrest angle



Tilt the switch forwards or backwards.

Adjusting the seat position automatically

General

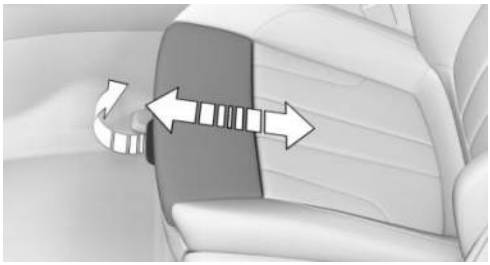
The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is loaded automatically.

Activating/deactivating the function

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select driver's seat.
5. "Use automatically"
6. Select the desired setting.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever on the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support forwards or backwards.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the backrest can be changed to provide support for the lumbar region, or lordosis. The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported to encourage an upright sitting posture.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▷ Press the button at the front/rear:
  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the button at the top/bottom:
  The curvature is shifted upwards/downwards.

Backrest width

Principle

The backrest width can be adjusted to improve lateral support when cornering.

General

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting the backrest width

- ▷ Press the button at the front:
  Backrest width is reduced.
- ▷ Press the button at the rear:
  Backrest width is increased.

Calibrating the front seats

General

As soon as the electric seat adjustment no longer functions precisely, a Check Control message is displayed on the control display.

To restore the accuracy of the electric seat setting, the front seats must be calibrated.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

There is a pinch hazard when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the movement range of the seat is clear.

Calibrating the front seat

1. Push the switch forward again in a longitudinal direction until the seat stops.
2. Push the switch forward again until the seat stops.

As soon as the message on the control display disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If the message is not hidden after repeated calibration, have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Seat belts

General

For the safety of the vehicle occupants, the vehicle is equipped with five seat belts. However, they can only provide a protective effect when applied correctly.

Before each journey, always make sure that all occupants have fastened their seat belts. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for the seat belts.

All belt anchorages are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect of the seat belts with proper use of the seat belts and correct seat setting.

The two outer seat belt buckles on the rear seats are intended for those sitting on the left and right.

The inner seat belt buckle on the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

For further information:

Notes on sitting safely, see page 106.

Safety information

WARNING

If a seat belt is used by more than one person at the same time, the protective effect of the seat belt is no longer guaranteed. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Only one person should use each seat belt at any one time. Do not allow infants and children to travel on the lap of another occupant. Instead, secure the infant or child in child restraint systems intended for this purpose.

WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts may be restricted or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts correctly.

WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack seat belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the seat belt strap by oils, polishes or similar chemicals and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using a mild soap and water solution. The seat belt should be replaced if the seat belt strap becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. Seat belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is forbidden to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

It is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING

No modifications or additions should be made by the user that will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not ensured. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Lock the wider rear seat backrest when using the middle seat belt.

WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts may be restricted or may even fail completely in the following situations:

- If the seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, dirty or have been modified in another way.
- If the seat belt tensioners or automatic reels have been modified.

Seat belts can be damaged in an accident without the damage necessarily being apparent. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not modify the seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, automatic reels, or belt anchor points, and ensure that they are kept clean. After an accident, have the seat belts inspected at an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Correct seat belt use

- Place the seat belt tightly over the pelvis and shoulder, close to the body and without twisting.
- Make sure that the seat belt is positioned low at the hips in the area of the pelvis. The seat belt must not press on the abdomen.
- The seat belt must not be allowed to rub against sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be trapped.
- Avoid wearing bulky clothing.
- Keep the seat belt taut by occasionally pulling upwards on the upper body area.

Setting for automatic retracting seat belts

- Draw the seat belt tongue attached to the seat belt across the body and press it into the seat belt buckle until a 'click' is heard.
- Adjustment of the belt length is very important. To adjust the lap belt and check whether the seat belt buckle has locked correctly, pull upwards on the shoulder strap until the lap belt fits tightly.
- The length of the diagonal shoulder strap adjusts itself automatically to allow freedom of movement.
- To release the seat belt, press the button on the seat belt buckle.

Fastening the seat belt

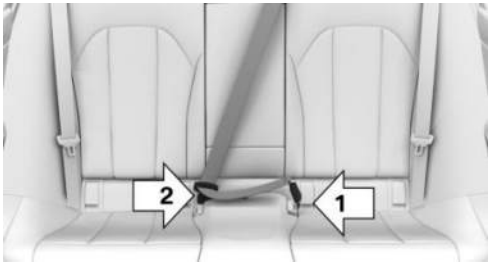
1. When fastening the seat belt, guide it slowly over the shoulder and pelvis.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue in the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the seat belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back up to the automatic reel.

Middle seat belt in the rear

Fastening the seat belt

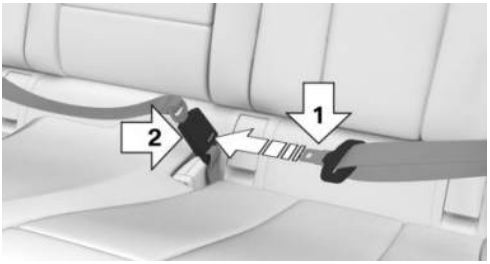


1. Pull the seat belt tongues from the mount on the parcel shelf.
2. Insert the lower seat belt tongue in the belt lock, arrow 1.
3. Insert the upper seat belt tongue in the seat belt buckle, arrow 2.

   The seat belt buckles must be heard to engage.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the seat belt buckle.
3. Use the seat belt tongue, arrow 1, to open the belt lock, arrow 2.



4. Guide the seat belt to the bracket on the parcel shelf.

Seat belt warning

General

Check whether the seat belts are fastened correctly.

The seat belt warning becomes active in the following situations:

- When the seat belt on the driver's side or on the passenger's side is not fastened.
- When the seat belt is unfastened while driving.
- When objects are lying on a seat.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after turning on the drive-ready state and the seat belt warning is active.

A Check Control message is shown where applicable. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and national-market version.

Icon	Meaning
	Seat belt is not buckled.
	Seat belt is only buckled on the corresponding seat.
	Seat belt on the corresponding seat is not buckled.
	Depending on the national-market version: Corresponding seat is not occupied.
	Depending on the national-market version: The seat belt warning is deactivated for the corresponding seat.

Safety function

Depending on the equipment, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving off, if the seat belt is fastened.

If necessary, the front seat belts are automatically pretensioned in accident-critical driving situations, for example, in the event of full braking.

If the critical driving situation passes without an accident occurring, the tension in the front seat belts is slackened again. If the belt tension does not slacken automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt by pressing the red button on the seat belt buckle. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing driving.

Front head restraints

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide a protective effect as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.
- ▷ For manually adjustable head restraints: after adjustment, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraint is moved. There is a danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the movement range is kept clear.

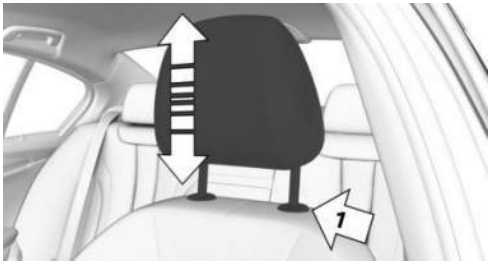
⚠ WARNING

Objects on the head restraint impair the protective effect of the head restraint in the head and neck area. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.

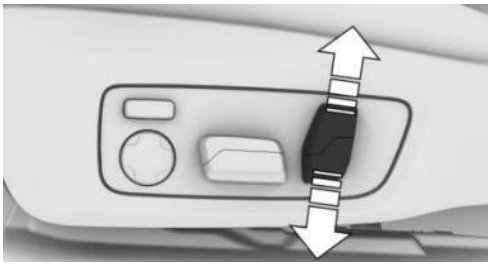
- Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

Adjusting the height



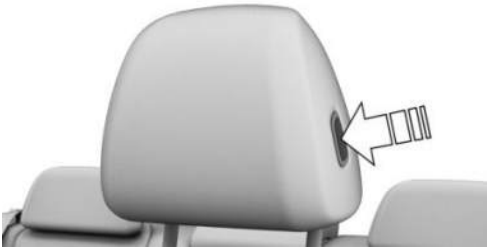
- Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- Up: push the head restraint upwards.

Adjusting the height: M sports seat



Press the switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance



- Back: press the button and push back the head restraint.
- Forward: pull the head restraint forwards.

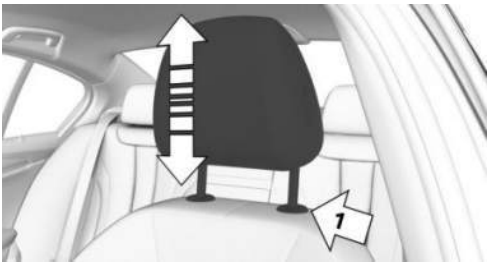
Adjusting the distance: M sport seat

The distance from the back of the head is adjusted by the seat backrest angle.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing the head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.



1. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Removing the head restraints: M sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Installing head restraints

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide a protective effect as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a danger of injury.

- Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.
- For manually adjustable head restraints: after adjustment, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraint is moved. There is a danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the movement range is kept clear.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint impair the protective effect of the head restraint in the head and neck area. There is a danger of injury.

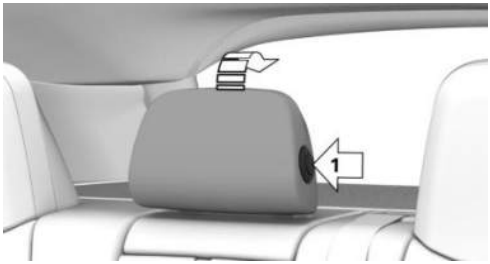
- Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

Folding down the head restraints

General

The head restraints can be folded down to improve rearward visibility. Only fold down the head restraint if no one will be sitting on the seat in question.

Folding down the head restraints



Press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backwards.

To return the head restraint to its original position, fold the head restraint forwards as far as it will go. Ensure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height

- Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- Up: push the head restraint upwards.

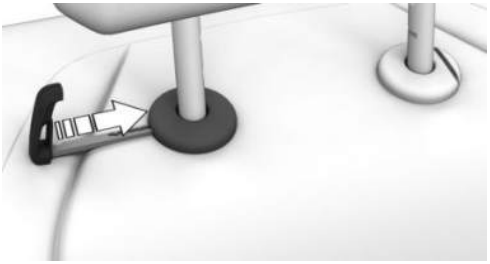
Removing the outer head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.

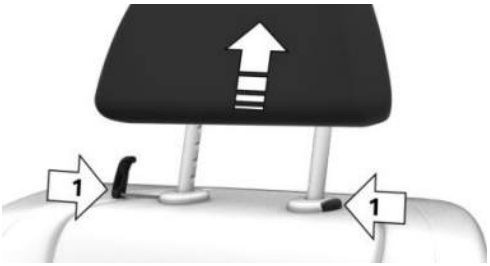
1. Fold down the respective rear seat backrest.

   To enlarge the luggage compartment, see page 302.
2. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
3. Insert the integrated key.

   Integrated key, see page 78.



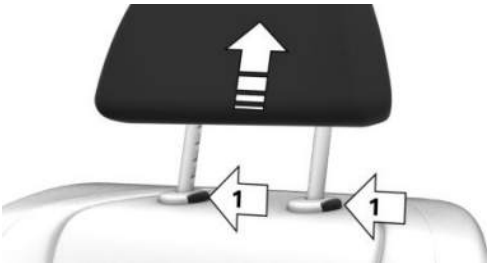
4. Press and hold the integrated key and the button simultaneously, arrows 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.



Removing the middle head restraint

Only remove the head restraint if no one is sitting on the middle seat.

1. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
2. Press the buttons, arrows 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.



Installing the head restraints

To install, insert the head restraint into the mount and push down until resistance is felt.

Exterior mirrors

General

The exterior mirror adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is loaded automatically.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior mirror on the driver's side is also automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this function.

When required, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when drive-ready state is switched on.

Safety information

WARNING

The mirror shows objects closer than they are. The distance from road users behind the vehicle could be incorrectly estimated, for example when changing driving lanes. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Look over your shoulder to estimate the distance from following traffic.

Overview

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirrors in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select exterior mirror, automatic parking function.

Adjust the exterior mirrors

Press the button.

The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting the exterior mirror

To switch to the other mirror:

Push the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical failure, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in/folding out the exterior mirror

NOTICE

Because of its width, the vehicle could sustain damage in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Before washing, fold the mirrors in manually or with the button.

Press the button.

The mirrors can be folded in at vehicle speeds up to approx. 20 km/h, approx. 12 mph.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- In narrow streets.

Mirrors which are folded in automatically fold out when the vehicle reaches a speed of approximately 40 km/h, 25 mph.

Automatic heating

When required, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is dimmed automatically. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this function.

Automatic parking function

Principle

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downwards. When parking, for example, this gives the driver a better view of the kerb or other objects near the ground.

Activating the automatic parking function

1.  Push the switch to the driver's mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

The automatic parking function is deactivated when the trailer socket is occupied.

Deactivating the automatic parking function

Push the switch to the front passenger's side exterior mirror position.

Interior mirror, manual dim

Reduce dazzling effect from the interior mirror by tilting the lever forward.

Rear-view mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function

General

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

The function is controlled by photocells:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview

Operating requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not obstruct the zone between the interior mirror and the windscreen.

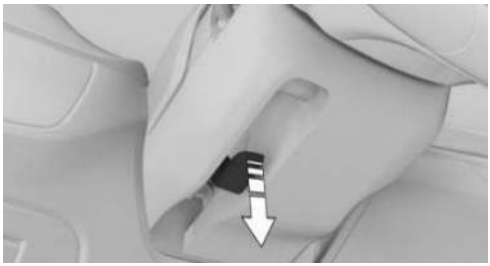
Steering wheel

Safety information

WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel while driving may cause the steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down fully.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and adjust it in the longitudinal direction and height of the seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Height of the head-up display.

General

For each driver profile, two memory slots can be assigned with different settings.

The following settings are not saved:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving may cause the seat or steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only use the memory function when the vehicle is at standstill.

WARNING

There is a pinch hazard when the seats are moved. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the movement range of the seat is clear.

Overview

The memory buttons are on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED is illuminated.
3. Press the desired memory button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Go to settings

Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

The saved position is retrieved.

The operation is halted when a seat setting switch or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Seat climate control

Various air conditioning functions are available for the seats.

For further information:

Air conditioning control, see page 275.

Carrying children safely

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Important considerations

Safety information

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves and other road users, for example, by the following actions:

- Activation of standby state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

WARNING

Hot vehicle can have fatal consequences, in particular for children or pets. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not leave anyone unsupervised in the vehicle, especially children or animals.

WARNING

Child restraint systems and their parts can get very hot when exposed to direct sunlight. Contact with hot parts can cause burns. There is a danger of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight; cover the child restraint system if necessary. If required, allow the child restraint system to cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.

Children on the rear seat

General

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Wherever possible, children younger than 12 years old or shorter than 150 cm, 5 ft should be transported only on the rear seats in child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and stature. Children aged 12 years and older must be secured with a seat belt once a suitable child restraint system is no longer an option due to their age, weight or stature.

Safety information

WARNING

Children shorter than 150 cm, 5 ft cannot wear the seat belt correctly without using additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of the seat belts may be restricted or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Children shorter than 150 cm, 5 ft must be secured in suitable child restraint systems.

Not for Australia: Children on the front passenger seat

General

When using a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

If it is not possible to deactivate the front passenger airbag, do not carry children in rearward-facing child restraint systems on the front passenger seat.

For further information:

Key switch for front passenger airbag, see page 184.

Safety information

DANGER

If triggered, an active front passenger airbag can fatally injure a child in a child restraint system which is mounted facing backwards. There is a danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Fitting child restraint systems

General

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

WARNING

If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, their protective effect may be restricted or may fail completely. A child might not be adequately restrained, for example in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury or danger to life.

Do not continue to use child restraint systems which are damaged or have been subjected to stresses in an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the seat is not set properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have restricted or no stability at all. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the seat backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible and if neces-

sary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

For Australia: installation of child restraint systems

Please note the following warning because your vehicle has been equipped with a front airbag for the front passenger seat that cannot be deactivated:

It is not recommended to use rearward-facing child restraint systems on the front passenger seat.

⚠ Extreme hazard

Do not use rearward-facing child restraint systems on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

Not for Australia: On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbag

⚠ DANGER

If triggered, an active front passenger airbag can fatally injure a child in a child restraint system which is mounted facing backwards. There is a danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Before installing a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated. If the airbag cannot be deactivated, do not install a rearward-facing child restraint system.

For further information:

Key switch for front passenger airbag, see page 184.

Rearward-facing child restraint systems

⚠ DANGER

If triggered, an active front passenger airbag can fatally injure a child in a child restraint system which is mounted facing backwards. There is a danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Follow the note on the sun visor on the passenger's side.

Never use rearward facing child restraint systems on a seat with an activated front airbag. Use may result in death or serious injury to children.

Seat position and height

After installing a universal child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the highest position. This seat position and height provides the best possible belt routing and protection in the event of an accident.

After installing a universal child restraint system, adjust the inclination of the seat backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is in front of the child seat's seat belt guide, care-

fully move the front passenger seat forwards until the best possible seat belt guide is achieved.

Backrest width

With adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, fully open the backrest width. Do not change the backrest width from this point on and do not retrieve a seat position from the memory.

Mountings for ISOFIX or i-Size

General

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems with ISOFIX or i-Size.

Suitable ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems

For further information:

Suitable seats for child restraint systems, see page 127.

ISOFIX child restraint systems

General

ISOFIX is a legal regulation for child restraint systems which is used for the approval of child restraint systems.

ISOFIX child restraint systems can be attached to mountings marked with ISOFIX.

Only certain ISOFIX child restraint systems are permitted for use on the designated seats. The associated size class and size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

Icon	Meaning
	If this icon is seen in the vehicle, the vehicle has been approved in accordance with the ISOFIX standard. The icon shows the mounts for the system's lower anchors. The lower mountings comply with ISOFIX requirements.
	The corresponding icon shows the top tether eyelet.

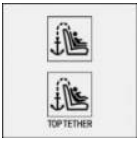
i-Size child restraint systems

General

i-Size is a legal regulation for child restraint systems which is used for the approval of child restraint systems.

The system represents a further development of the ISOFIX child safety seat fasteners.

ISOFIX child restraint systems can also be attached to anchors with i-Size markings.

Icon	Meaning
	If this icon is seen in the vehicle, the vehicle has also been approved in accordance with i-Size. The icon shows the mounts for the system's lower anchors. The lower anchors meet the European i-Size requirements.
	The corresponding icon shows the top tether eyelet.

Fixtures for lower anchors

General

Note the following when fitting child restraint systems with integrated safety belt to the mounts for the lower anchors:

The total weight of the child and child restraint system must not exceed 33 kg, 73 lb.

Safety information

WARNING

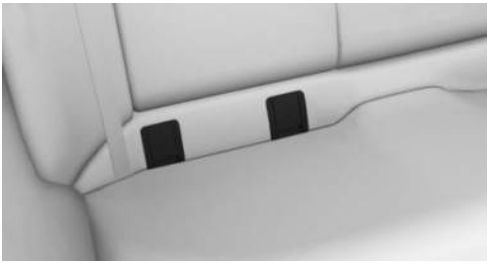
If the child restraint system lower anchors are not engaged correctly, the protective effect of the child restraint system will be restricted. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure the lower anchor points have engaged correctly and the child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest.

WARNING

The mounts for the lower anchors and the attachment points for child restraint systems are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Only attach child restraint systems to the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or the attachment points.

Position

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the fixtures for the lower ISOFIX anchors or i-Size mounting.



The fixtures for the lower anchors are located behind the marked covers. To expose the anchorage points, open the flaps upwards.

Close the flaps again after removing the child restraint system.

Before fitting child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system, pull the seat belt away out of the area of the lower mountings of the child restraint system.

Fitting child restraint systems

1. Install child restraint system, see the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system attachment correctly engages in the lower anchor on both sides.

Child restraint systems with upper restraint strap

General

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the information, operating and safety instructions of the child restraint system manufacturer.

Safety information

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly on the child restraint system, the protective effect will be reduced. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper attachment point over sharp edges.

WARNING

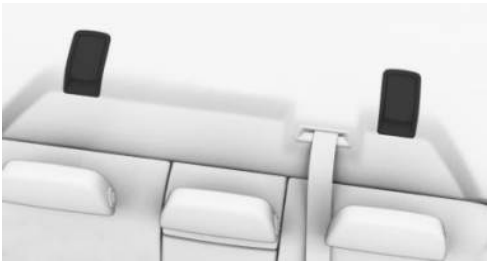
If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system will be restricted or lost. The rear seat backrest may fold forward in certain situations, for example in the event of braking manoeuvre or an accident. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

WARNING

The mounts for the lower anchors and the attachment points for child restraint systems are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Only attach child restraint systems to the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or the attachment points.

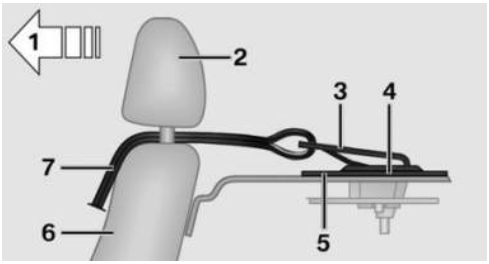
Attachment points for upper retaining strap

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the top tether eyelet.



Depending on the equipment, there are two or three attachment points for the upper retaining strap of child restraint systems.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook of the upper retaining strap
4 Attachment point
5 Parcel shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Open the cover of the attachment point.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint rods or along both sides of the head restraint rods to the attachment point.

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

Suitable seats for child restraint systems

General

The legal provisions determining which child seat is permitted for which age and body size may vary from country to country. Please comply with the relevant national legal provisions.

Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

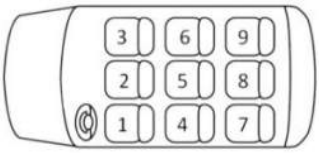
For detailed information about using child restraint systems:

Seats for child restraint systems, see page 410.

Seats and child restraint systems

The following section provides information on which child restraint system is suitable for which seat in the vehicle.

Left-hand drive vehicles, seats:



Seat	Airbag, front passenger – f)	Mounting				
1		X				
3 a)	ON only forward-facing child restraint system	U	L			
	OFF only rearward facing child restraint system	U	L			
4, 6 – b)		U	L		e)	

Seat	Airbag, front passenger – f)	Mounting
5 – c, d)		U

a) Move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the highest position. Then adjust the angle of the backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing.

b) When using child restraint systems on the rear seats, adjust the longitudinal direction of the front seat if necessary and, if possible and necessary, adjust or remove the head restraint of the rear seat.

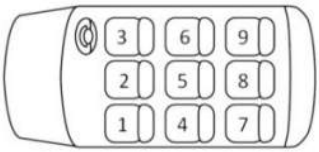
c) Only use the outer seats if the seat belt buckles are easily accessible.

d) The seat is not suitable for child restraint systems with a support stand.

e) Depending on the equipment or national-market version.

f) Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is possible depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Right-hand drive vehicle, seats:



Seat	Airbag, front passenger – f)	Mounting	
1 a)	ON only forward-facing child restraint system	U	L
	OFF only rearward facing child restraint system	U	L
3		X	

Seat	Airbag, front passenger – f)	Mounting				
4, 6 – b)		U	L		 e)	
5 – c, d)		U				

a) Move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust it to the highest position. Then adjust the angle of the backrest to achieve the best possible belt routing.

b) When using child restraint systems on the rear seats, adjust the longitudinal direction of the front seat if necessary and, if possible and necessary, adjust or remove the head restraint of the rear seat.

c) Only use the outer seats if the seat belt buckles are easily accessible.

d) The seat is not suitable for child restraint systems with a support stand.

e) Depending on the equipment or national-market version.

f) Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is possible depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
X	Not suitable for child restraint systems.		Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.
U	Suitable for belted child restraint systems in the Universal category.		Suitable for ISOFIX and i-Size child restraint systems.
L	Suitable for child restraint systems in the semi-universal category if the vehicle and seat are given in the list of vehicle types from the manufacturer of the child restraint system.		Suitable for child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap.

Recommended child seats

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the following child restraint systems:

- Maxi-Cosi Pebble 360.
- Maxi-Cosi FamilyFix 360 Base.
- With i-Size: Römer TRIFIX 2.
- With ISOFIX: Römer Duo Plus.
- Römer KIDFIX series.

For Australia: Child restraint systems

General

In accordance with ADR 34/03, provisions have been made to allow installation of a child restraint system at each rear seat position.

The anchoring hooks which belong to the upper restraining strap of the child restraint system - AS 1754, can be applied immediately to the relevant mount.

Please refer strictly to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint system.

Each seat position is fitted with a head restraint.

Safety information

WARNING

Anchors for child restraint systems are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraint systems. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle. After using and removing child restraint systems, fold away the anchor brackets if necessary.

WARNING

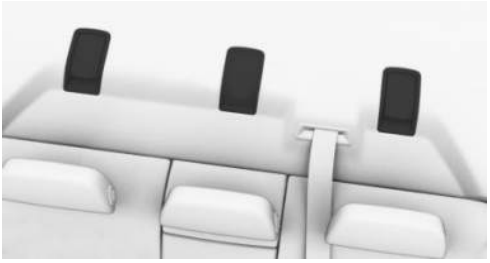
If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system will be restricted or lost. The rear seat backrest may fold forward in certain situations, for example in the event of braking manoeuvre or an accident. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly on the child restraint system, the protective effect will be reduced. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper attachment point over sharp edges.

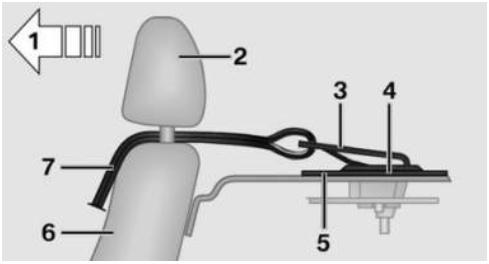
Attachment points

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the top tether eyelet.



Depending on the equipment, there are two outer attachment points or three other attachment points for child restraint systems with tether straps.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook of the upper retaining strap
4 Attachment point
5 Parcel shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Open the cover of the attachment point.
2. Push the head restraint up or remove it.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint rods or along both sides of the head restraint rods to the attachment point.

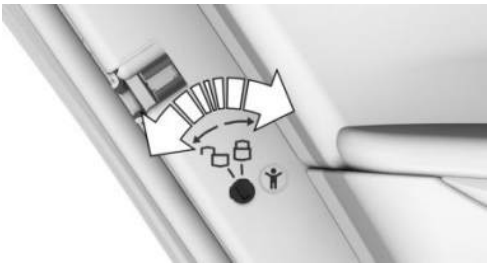
   Middle seat: guide the upper retaining strap over the head restraint.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

Securing doors and windows in the rear

General

In certain situations, for example when carrying children, it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows.

Doors



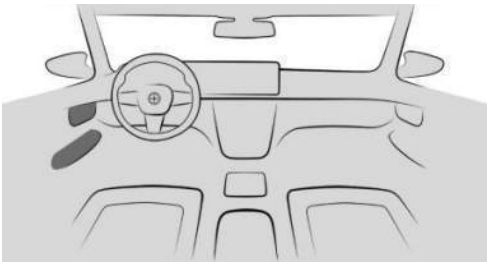
Unlock or lock the safety switches on the rear doors with the integrated key.

Icon	Function
	Child locks are unlocked.
	Child locks are locked.

The respective door can now only be opened from the outside.

After locking, make sure that the door cannot be opened from the inside.

Rear safety switch



Press the button on the driver's door.

Different functions are locked and cannot be operated in the rear, for example the window lifters.

Driving

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Start/Stop button

Principle

Drive-ready state is switched on and off by pressing the Start/Stop button.

General

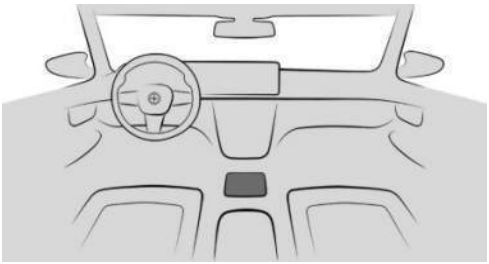
Drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button with the brake applied.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches drive-ready state off again and standby state is switched on.

For further information:

- Drive-ready state, see page 50.
- Standby state, see page 49.

Overview



START ENGINE STOP Start/Stop button

Driving off

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
3. Engage the desired selector lever position, for example, D or R.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. To drive off, release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

Acoustic pedestrian protection

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, acoustic pedestrian protection generates continuous driving noise in vehicles with electric or electrically assisted drives.

- With a stationary vehicle and turned on drive-ready state as soon as the selector lever position P is exited.
- With electric drive mode up to 30 km/h/20 mph.

A speaker system plays the noise outside the vehicle. As a result, other road users, for example pedestrians or cyclists, can detect the vehicle better.

Automatic Start/Stop function

Principle

The Automatic Start/Stop function helps you to save fuel. It does this by switching off the engine when the vehicle stops, for example in congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. For driving off, the engine starts automatically.

General

The Automatic Start/Stop function is in standby state each time the engine is started via the Start/Stop button.

The function is activated at low speeds.

Engine shutdown

Operating requirements

The engine is automatically shut down when stationary when the following conditions are met:

- Selector lever in selector lever position D.
- Brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or the vehicle is kept stationary by Automatic Hold.
- Driver's seat belt fastened or driver's door closed.

Manual engine shutdown

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle came to a stop, it can be switched off manually:

- Rapidly press the brake pedal from the current position.
- Engage selector lever in position P.

If all the operating requirements have been met, the engine is stopped.

Air conditioning when the vehicle is parked

The amount of air of the air conditioning is reduced when the engine is not running.

Display in the instrument cluster

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Automatic Start/Stop function is ready for automatic engine start.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations, for example:

- On a steep downhill gradient.
- The brake pedal has not been pressed hard enough.
- When the outside temperature is high and the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- The vehicle interior is not yet heated or cooled to the desired temperature.
- Where there is a risk of condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- The engine or other parts are not at operating temperature.
- Engine cooling is required.
- The vehicle battery is highly discharged.
- At high altitudes.
- The bonnet is unlocked.
- For stop-and-go traffic.
- After reversing.
- Without mild hybrid technology: with large wheel angle or strong steering operation.
- The selector lever is in S or R position.

Engine start

Operating requirements

For driving off, the engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- With Automatic Hold activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

Accelerate as usual after starting the engine.

Safety function

After an automatic shut down, the engine will not restart automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

- Driver's seat belt unfastened and driver's door open.
- Bonnet has been unlocked.

Several indicator lights illuminate for various lengths of time.

The engine can be started only using the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if you do not want to drive off, the engine restarts automatically in the following situations:

- If the vehicle interior is very warm when the air conditioning function is turned on.
- If the vehicle interior is very cold when the heating is switched on.
- Where there is a risk of condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- Without mild hybrid technology:

  In case of a steering operation.
- When changing the selector lever position from D or P.
- In case of seriously discharged vehicle battery.
- When starting an oil level measurement.

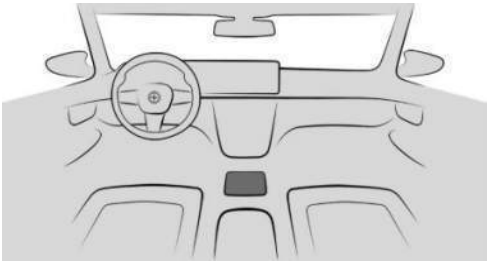
Manually deactivating the system

Principle

In certain driving situations, for example, in congestion, it may be appropriate to deactivate the Automatic Start/Stop function manually. The engine is then no longer switched off automatically.

If the function is deactivated during an automatic engine stop, the engine is started.

Depending on the equipment: via button



(A)OFF Press the button.

- LED illuminates: Automatic Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- The LED is off: Automatic Start/Stop function is activated.

Via selector lever position

The Automatic Start/Stop function is also deactivated in selector lever position S.

Via Driving Experience Control

The Automatic Start/Stop function is also deactivated in the SPORT drive mode of Driving Experience Control.

Parking the vehicle during automatic engine shutdown

During an automatic engine shutdown, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example in order to exit it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - Standby state is switched on.
   - Selector lever position P is automatically engaged.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations the Automatic Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety

reasons, for example if the absence of the driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Automatic Start/Stop function no longer shuts down the engine automatically. A Check Control message is shown. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Steptronic transmission

Principle

The Steptronic transmission is the vehicle's automatic transmission. With the shift paddle, there is the option of changing gear manually if required.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away by, for example, applying the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

D Drive position

Selector lever position for all normal driving. All gears for driving forwards are selected automatically.

R Reverse gear

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle can be pushed or can roll without drive power, for example in car washes.

P Park

General

Selector lever position once the vehicle is parked, for example. In selector lever position P, the transmission blocks the drivetrain.

Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged in situations such as the following:

- After switching off the drive-ready state when selector lever position R, D, or S is engaged.
- After switching off the standby state when selector lever position N is engaged.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened when the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, S or R is engaged.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is engaged and the parking brake is engaged. The vehicle could otherwise start to move.

For further information:

Parking brake, see page 141.

Engaging selector lever positions

General

Apply the brake until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when drive position or reverse gear is selected.

In exceptional cases, for example, rocking free on snow, it is possible to shift between reverse gear and gear selector position D without pressing the brake.

Operating requirements

The selector lever will only move from position P to another selector lever position if drive-ready state is switched on and the brake is pressed.

It may not be possible to move out of selector lever position P until all technical conditions are met.

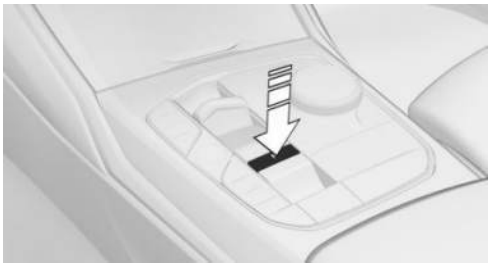
Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

1. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
2. Tilt or pull the selector lever into the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever returns to the centre position when released.

Engaging selector lever position P

Press the button.

The parking brake is applied and transmission lock is engaged.



Press button P.

The transmission lock is engaged.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General

In some situations, the vehicle may need to roll a short distance without drive power, for example in a conveyor car wash, or when being pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

NOTICE

The selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are locked. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state if the vehicle is to roll, e.g. in conveyor car washes.

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing the brake.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake and switch off Automatic Hold.
3. Undo belt if necessary.
4. Open door if necessary.
5. Press the brake.
6. Engage selector lever position N.
7. Switch off the drive-ready state.

   Standby state then remains switched on and a Check Control message is shown.

   The vehicle can now roll.

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a fault, it may not be possible to change the selector lever position.

Unlock the parking lock electronically if necessary.

For further information:

Unlocking the parking lock electronically, see page 137.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum performance.

Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the regular full-throttle position; some resistance will be felt.

Sport programme S

Principle

In the Sport programme, the gear shift points and gear shift times are configured for more sporty driving. For example, the transmission shifts up later and the gearshift times are shorter.

Activating the Sport programme

Pull the selector lever out of selector lever position D to D/S.

The gear selected is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example S1.

The Sport programme of the transmission is activated.

Ending Sport programme

Pull the selector lever to D/S.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Unlocking the parking lock electronically

General

Unlock the transmission lock electronically, e.g. to manoeuvre the vehicle out of a danger area in the event of a fault.

Before unlocking the parking lock, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, for example with a chock.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press the Start/Stop button three times quickly without pressing the brake.
2. Press the brake.
3. Press the selector lever to position N until position N is displayed on the selector lever.

   A corresponding Check Control message is shown.
4. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of danger and then secure it against rolling away.

Shift paddles

Principle

The shift paddles on the steering wheel enable the gears to be changed manually.

General

Gearshift

Gear shifting is only carried out at the appropriate rotational speed and vehicle speed.

Even in manual mode, the transmission switches automatically in certain situations, e.g. when speed limits are reached.

Temporary manual mode

In selector lever position D, pulling a shift paddle causes the system to switch to manual mode temporarily.

The gear selected is also displayed in the instrument cluster, for example D1.

The transmission reverts to automatic mode from manual mode after a certain period of time of moderate driving without acceleration or gear shifts using the shift paddles.

It is possible to change to automatic mode:

- Pull and hold the right shift paddle until D is shown in the instrument cluster.
- While pulling and holding the right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Permanent manual mode

In Sport programme S, pulling a shift paddle causes the system to switch permanently to manual mode M.

The gear selected is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example M1.

It is possible to change to automatic mode:

- Pull and hold the right shift paddle until S is shown in the instrument cluster.
- While pulling and holding the right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.
- Pull the selector lever to D/S.

If M2 is set manually while the vehicle is stationary, the transmission will no longer shift back to M1. These shift characteristics are retained until M1 is engaged manually or manual mode M is exited.

Shifting gears

- To shift up: pull the right shift paddle.
- To shift down: pull the left shift paddle.

The gear selected appears briefly in the instrument cluster, followed by the gear currently in use.

Advanced mode

General

Depending on the equipment, the Steptronic sport transmission offers an advanced mode with adapted shift characteristics.

- Automatic downshift to the lowest possible gear.

  If the left shift paddle is pulled and held, the Steptronic transmission automatically shifts down to the lowest possible gear.
- Avoid automatic upshifting in manual mode.

  The Steptronic transmission does not shift up automatically in manual mode when speed limits are reached.
- There is no downshift for kickdown.

Activating advanced mode

Advanced mode is active in manual mode.

"SPORT": Depending on the equipment, the drive mode must be selected and configured accordingly.

Launch Control

Principle

When the ambient conditions are dry, Launch Control permits optimised acceleration on a road surface that offers plenty of grip.

General

Using Launch Control causes premature component wear, as this feature subjects the vehicle to very high stresses and loads.

When driving off with Launch Control, do not turn the steering wheel.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

For further information:

Running in, see page 304.

Operating requirement

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted journey of at least 10 km, 6 miles.

Start up with Launch Control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. 

Press the button.
4. Activate TRACTION on the control display.
5. Press the brake firmly with the left foot.
6. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance at the full-throttle position and hold, kickdown.

   A destination flag is shown in the instrument cluster.
7. The engine speed for pulling away is adjusted. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
8. Release the brake within a few seconds of the destination flag illuminating.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifts are performed automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal remains depressed.

Using again during a journey

Once Launch Control has been used, the transmission requires a short time to cool down before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adapts to the ambient conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode without Launch Control.

Steptronic sport transmission: sprint function

Principle

Depending on the equipment, the sprint function can be used when the driver is about to accelerate. The sprint function prepares the drivetrain for the acceleration.

General

Activating the sprint function makes the vehicle's response characteristics more dynamic.

Activating

1. Pull and hold the left shift paddle until SPRINT is shown in the instrument cluster.
   - ▷ The transmission changes down to the lowest possible gear and switches to manual mode M.
   - ▷ A dynamic setting is activated for the drivetrain.
2. Change gears manually.

Deactivating automatically

The sprint function ends automatically if the vehicle is driven moderately for a certain amount of time.

Deactivating manually

- ▷ Pull and hold the right shift paddle until SPRINT is no longer shown in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ While pulling and holding the right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.
- ▷ Press the selector lever from position S to position D.

Driving Experience Control

Principle

The Driving Experience Control influences, among other things, the characteristics of the driving dynamics of the vehicle.

Various drive modes allow the vehicle to be adapted to suit the situation.

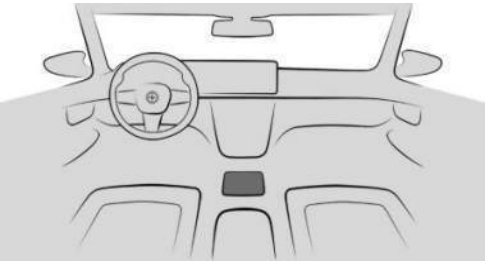
General

The following systems are influenced, for example:

- ▷ Drivetrain.
- ▷ Suspension.
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Cruise Control.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Button	Drive mode
SPORT	SPORT SPORT PLUS SPORT INDIVIDUAL
COMFORT	COMFORT
ECO PRO	ECO PRO ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected drive mode is shown in the instrument cluster.

Activating/deactivating the drive mode

Press the button of the desired drive mode repeatedly until the desired drive mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When the drive mode is changed, the current drive mode is deactivated.

Drive modes in detail

COMFORT

The COMFORT drive mode is a balanced setting between sporty and consumption-optimised driving.

SPORT

The SPORT drive mode is a dynamic setting for greater agility with an optimised suspension.

SPORT PLUS

The SPORT PLUS drive mode is a dynamic setting for maximum agility with an adapted drivetrain.

ECO PRO

The ECO PRO drive mode provides a consumption-optimised setting.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General

For some drive modes there is another individually adjustable mode.

The most recent custom configuration is activated when the drive mode is called up again.

Configuring and resetting

For example, ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL drive mode:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
6. Select the desired setting.

To reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the default setting:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Activating INDIVIDUAL

Press the button of the desired drive mode several times.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The drive-off assistant provides support when driving off on upward gradients.

Driving off

1. Stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal.
2. Release the brake pedal and drive off without delay.

After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle is held in place for approximately 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle's load or in trailer operation, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

Depending on the vehicle's load, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1.  Shortly before driving off, pull and release the switch.

   The parking brake is engaged.
2. To drive off, press the accelerator pedal with sufficient force.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it in order to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

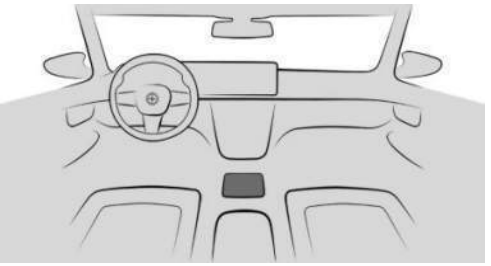
WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves and other road users, for example, by the following actions:

- Activation of standby state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview



Parking brake

Applying the parking brake

When the vehicle is stationary

Pull the switch.

The LED is illuminated.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated red.

The parking brake is engaged.

While driving

The parking brake can be used as an emergency braking function while driving.

Pull and hold the switch. The vehicle brakes hard for as long as the switch is pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated red, a signal sounds and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is shown.

Apply the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

With Emergency Stop Assistant

Briefly pull the switch to trigger the Emergency Stop Assistant.

For further information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, see page 208.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.  Press the switch with the brake applied or the selector lever in position P.

   The LED and the indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically released when you drive off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

Malfunction

If a parking brake has failed or malfunctioned, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away before leaving the vehicle.

A Check Control message is shown.

After getting out, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, for example with a chock.

After an open circuit

To restore the operability of the parking brake after a power failure, an initialisation may be required.

1. Switch on standby state.
2.  Pull the switch with the brake applied or the selector lever in position P and then press it.

The procedure can take a few seconds. Any sounds that occur are normal.

The indicator light goes out as soon as the parking brake is operational again.

Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, for example, when driving off on uphill gradients or in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

General

The parking brake is released automatically when the following conditions are met:

- If the drive-ready state is switched off.
- If the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- If the vehicle is braked to a standstill with the auto hold brake while driving.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it in order to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves and other road users, for example, by the following actions:

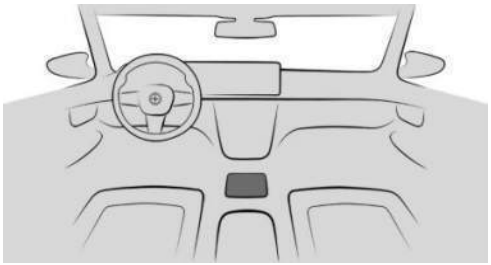
- Activation of standby state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

Automatic Hold applies the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary and will prevent the vehicle from rolling in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold before driving into the car wash.

Overview



AUTO H Automatic Hold

Activate Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.
   The LED is illuminated.

AUTO H The indicator light illuminates green.
Automatic Hold is activated.

Automatic Hold holds the vehicle

Automatic Hold is activated and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) Once the vehicle has stopped, it is automatically secured from rolling away once the indicator light lights up green.

Automatic parking brake application

The parking brake is applied automatically if drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited while Automatic Hold is holding the vehicle.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not applied automatically if drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was rolling to a stop. Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated in this case.

Driving off

To drive off, press the accelerator pedal.

The brake is released automatically and the parking brake indicator light goes out.

Depending on the vehicle load and driving situation or in trailer operation, the vehicle may roll backwards a little when driving off.

Depending on the vehicle load and driving situation, the vehicle may roll backwards a little when driving off.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the auto hold brake if necessary.

Deactivate Automatic Hold

Press the button.

The LED goes out.

The indicator light extinguishes.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also depress the brake when deactivating.

Displays

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Instrument cluster

Principle

The instrument cluster comprises various digital displays, e.g. a speedometer, displays for time, range, temperature, or indicator/warning lights.

General

The layout of the instrument cluster adapts to the respective drive mode. The positions of some displays may vary, e.g. the selector lever indication.

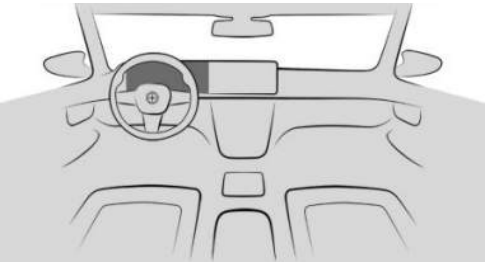
The displays in the instrument cluster can sometimes differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Handbook.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

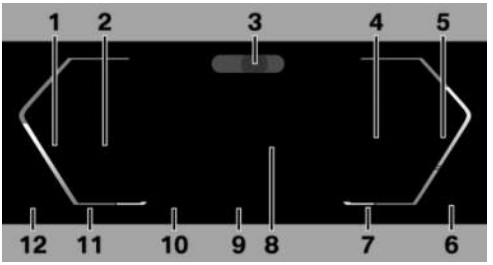
If the displays for the driving information fail, for example, the speedometer, the vehicle must not be used. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Immediately park the vehicle safely. By switching drive-ready state off and on again, it may be possible to rectify the malfunction and continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be rectified, have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Overview



Instrument cluster

Indication ranges in the instrument cluster



1 Speedometer
2 Driver assistance systems 222
3 Driver Attention Camera 216
4 Check Control 149
Selector lever indication 135
Optimum shift indicator 158
Selection lists 157
Using ECO PRO efficiently 319
5 Power display 158

Revolution counter 159
6 Engine temperature 160
7 Outside temperature 160
8 Central display area 161
Shift Lights 160
9 Drive mode 140
10 Speed Limit Info 222
Speed Limit Assist 238
11 Time 164
12 Fuel level indicator 165
Range 165

For further information:
Indicator and warning lights, see page 150.

Operating elements on the steering wheel

Operating element	Function
	Display the menu bar in the instrument cluster.
	Press the corresponding arrow button to move the selection.
	Turn the knurled wheel: scroll the selection up or down. Press the knurled wheel: confirm the selection.

Configuring the layout

In COMFORT drive mode, the layout can be individually configured and displayed in the instrument cluster.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "LAYOUT"
   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel as necessary.
3. Select the required setting using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

Settings

Individual displays can be set individually, e.g. a second actual speed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

Live Vehicle

Principle

Live Vehicle is a virtual representation of the vehicle with different information, for example, on the vehicle status or current driving condition.

General

Depending on the driving situation, suitable content is shown on the control display. Fault statuses are not taken into account. It is possible to choose between adaptive content and a variety of static content.

Adaptive content

The following is displayed in alternating order and, if applicable, depending on the selected drive mode:

- Vehicle status, see page 165.
- Current driving condition, see page 166.
- Sport displays, see page 166.

- Driving style analysis, see page 320.
- Trip data, see page 161.

Configuring the display

In the Live Vehicle menu, adaptive content or various static display content can be selected in the left sidebar:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. Select the desired setting.

BMW head-up display

Principle

The head-up display projects important information on the windscreen in the driver's field of view, for example, the speed. Information can be perceived without looking away from the road.

The buttons on the steering wheel can be used to configure various views for the head-up display. Further settings are possible on the control display, for example, brightness, height or rotation.

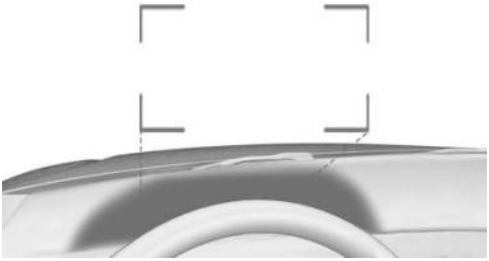
General

Follow the instructions on cleaning the head-up display in the Care chapter.

For further information:

Care of special parts, see page 388.

Overview



The head-up display displays are projected onto the windscreen by a protective glass. The protective glass is located between the steering wheel and the windscreen.

Displayable information

The following information is displayed in the head-up display:

- Speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Sport displays.
- Shift Lights.
- Lists and messages.
- Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only shown briefly when needed.

Configuring a view

The views for the head-up display can be set independently of the display in the instrument cluster, for e.g. a reduced view.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.

   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "HEAD-UP"

Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel as necessary.

3. Select the required setting using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

Turning the head-up display on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Settings

Various settings can be made for the head-up display, for example, for height, brightness or rotation. In addition, individual displays in the head-up display can be set up separately, for instance information on driver assistance.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the information shown on the head-up display can be affected by the following:

- The sitting position.
- Objects on the protective glass of the head-up display.
- Dust or dirt on the protective glass on the head-up display.
- Dirt on the inside or outside of the windscreen.
- Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters.
- Wet roads.
- Adverse lighting conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the default settings checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Special windscreen

The windscreen is an integral part of the system.

The shape and coating of the special windscreen enable the system to function.

In the event of damage, have the special windscreen replaced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Check Control

Principle

Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the head-up display. An acoustic signal may also be output and a text message shown on the control display.

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approximately 20 seconds and remain stored. The stored Check Control messages can be displayed on the control display. Urgent Check Control messages are displayed continuously and can possibly be hidden temporarily.

Hiding Check Control messages

Permanently displayed Check Control messages may be temporarily hidden. After approx. 8 seconds, these messages are automatically displayed again.

‹ An arrow symbol next to the Check Control message indicates whether the Check Control message can be hidden.

To hide Check Control messages, press the left arrow button on the steering wheel.

Displaying saved Check Control messages

Additional information, for example the cause of the fault and any action required, can be called up via Check Control.

It is possible to select additional assistance depending on the Check Control message.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Check Control"
5. Select the required text message.

Display

A Check Control message is displayed on the instrument cluster as a text message with icon.

With urgent messages, additional instructions will be displayed automatically on the control display.

If a number of malfunctions have occurred at the same time, the messages are displayed in succession.

Certain messages displayed when driving are displayed again when the drive-ready state is switched off.

Icons on the instrument cluster indicate an active or saved Check Control message.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Principle

The indicator lights and warning lights on the instrument cluster show the status of some vehicle functions. The indicator lights and warning lights indicate faults in monitored systems.

General

The indicator/warning lights may illuminate in various combinations and colours.

When switching on drive-ready state, the functionality of some lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

Red lights

Seat belt warning

Seat belt is not buckled.

For further information:

Seat belt warning, see page 112.

Airbag system

Warning light is illuminated briefly: this indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when the vehicle is switched on.

Warning light does not illuminate or illuminates continuously: The airbag system or belt tensioners may not be functioning. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Airbags, see page 182.

Parking brake

The parking brake is engaged.

For further information:

Parking brake, see page 141.

Brake system

The brake pads are worn or there is a fault in the brake system.

The braking force assistance may be not functional. A higher pedal force may be required during the braking process.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Emergency Stop Assistant

The Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered.

For further information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, see page 208.

Pedestrian warning

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with a person, e.g. pedestrian or cyclist, has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and signal sounds: risk of impending collision with a person, e.g. pedestrian or cyclist, has been detected. Immediately start braking or an avoidance manoeuvre.

For further information:

Pedestrian Warning with city braking function, see page 192.

Collision Warning

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision, e.g. with a vehicle, has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and signal sounds: risk of impending collision with a vehicle has been detected. Immediately start braking or an avoidance manoeuvre.

For further information:

Collision Warning with braking function, see page 191.

Crossroads Warning: vehicle detected from the right

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with a vehicle crossing from the right has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and signal sounds: risk of impending collision with a crossing vehicle has been detected. Immediately start braking or an avoidance manoeuvre.

For further information:

Crossroads Warning with city braking function, see page 193.

Crossroads Warning: vehicle detected from left

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with a vehicle crossing from the left has been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and signal sounds: risk of impending collision with a crossing vehicle has been detected. Immediately start braking or an avoidance manoeuvre.

For further information:

Crossroads Warning with city braking function, see page 193.

Crossroads Warning: vehicle from undetectable direction of travel

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with a vehicle approaching from an undetectable direction of travel has

been detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and signal sounds: risk of impending collision with a vehicle has been detected. Immediately start braking or an avoidance manoeuvre.

For further information:

Crossroads Warning with city braking function, see page 193.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Warning light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: brake and perform avoidance manoeuvre, if necessary.

For further information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, see page 230.

Steering and Lane Control Assistant

Depending on the national-market version: the warning light flashes or is illuminated. A signal sounds:

The system is switched off.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Steering and Lane Control Assistant: hands not on the steering wheel

The warning light is illuminated and a signal sounds:

Hands are not holding the steering wheel. A system interruption is imminent.

The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable.

The system may possibly not perform any supporting steering wheel movements.

Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Braking System

There is a malfunction or the system is faulty. The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is not available.

Ease of steering may be restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS), see page 218.

Brake system

The brake pads are worn or there is a fault in the brake system.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Steering and Lane Control Assistant

Warning light is illuminated and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The warning light flashes: lane boundary has been crossed.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Steering and Lane Control Assistant: hands not on the steering wheel

Hands are not holding the steering wheel. System remains active.

Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Front collision warning restricted or failed

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: functional limitation detected, for example due to system limits of the camera or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.

For further information:

Front collision warning, see page 188.

Front collision warning switched off

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: the system is switched off.

For further information:

Front collision warning, see page 188.

Dynamic Stability Control

Warning light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the drive and brake forces. The vehicle is being stabilised. Reduce speed and adjust the driving style to the road conditions.

Warning light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is initialising. The driving stabilisation is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light is continuously illuminated, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Dynamic Stability Control, see page 218.

Dynamic Stability Control deactivated or Dynamic Traction Control activated

Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

For further information:

- Dynamic Stability Control, see page 218.
- Dynamic Traction Control, see page 220.

Flat tyre monitor

The warning light illuminates: flat tyre or a tyre pressure loss has been detected.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.

For further information:

Flat tyre monitor, see page 344.

Tyre Pressure Monitor

The warning light illuminates: flat tyre or a tyre pressure loss has been detected. Note the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: the system is unable to detect flat tyres or tyre pressure losses.

- Fault due to systems or devices with the same radio frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- For tyres with special approval: the Tyre Pressure Monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- Wheel without wheel electronics is fitted: if necessary have it checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another

qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 337.

Steering system

The steering system may be faulty.

Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Exhaust emissions

▷ When the warning light flashes:

There is an engine fault which could damage the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked immediately.

▷ When warning light illuminates:

deterioration of the exhaust gas quality.

Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Lane Departure Warning

Depending on equipment and national-market version:

Warning light is illuminated: functional limitation detected, for example, due to low sun or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.

Warning light flashes: a warning is issued actively. The system does not carry out any steering interventions.

For further information:

Lane Departure Warning, see page 196.

Rear fog light

Rear fog light is switched on.

For further information:

Rear fog light, see page 176.

Acoustic pedestrian protection

Acoustic protection for pedestrians has failed. Increased caution when manoeuvring.

In case of repeated malfunctions, have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Acoustic protection for pedestrians, see page 132

Green lights

Turn indicators

The turn indicator is switched on.

If the indicator light flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn indicator bulb has failed.

For further information:

Turn indicators, see page 169.

Side lights

The side lights are switched on.

For further information:

Side light, low-beam headlight, see page 172.

Low-beam headlight

The low-beam headlight is switched on.

For further information:

Side light, low-beam headlight, see page 172.

High-beam Assistant

Low-beam headlight is switched on and the High-beam Assistant is activated.

The high-beam headlight is switched on and off automatically according to traffic situation.

For further information:

High-beam Assistant, see page 170.

Lane Departure Warning

Depending on equipment and national-market version:

Indicator light flashes: the system actively issues a warning. If necessary, the system performs a steering intervention.

For further information:

Lane Departure Warning, see page 196.

Automatic Hold is activated

After stopping, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling away by Automatic Hold.

For further information:

Automatic Hold, see page 143.

Automatic Hold holds the vehicle

Automatic Hold secures the stationary vehicle against rolling away, for example, when stopped at traffic lights.

For further information:

Automatic Hold, see page 143.

Manual Speed Limiter

Indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on.

Indicator light flashes: set speed limit is exceeded.

For further information:

Manual Speed Limiter, see page 225.

Cruise Control

The system is active.

For further information:

Cruise Control, see page 227.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Indicator light illuminates: system has detected a vehicle ahead. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected.

Indicator light flashing: vehicle in front has driven off.

For further information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, see page 230.

Speed Limit Assist activated

Depending on the equipment, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a Cruise Control System. Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted manually for the displayed system.

For further information:

Speed Limit Assist, see page 238.

Speed Limit Assist: apply speed limit

The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been adopted, a green tick is displayed.

For further information:

Speed Limit Assist, see page 238.

Steering and Lane Control Assistant

The system is activated and assists in keeping the vehicle in the driving lane.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Lane Change Assistant: lane change in progress

Green arrow symbol for lane-changing: the system is carrying out a lane change.

For further information:

Lane Change Assistant, see page 248.

Lane Change Assistant Lane: lane change not possible

Grey line for lane boundary on the appropriate side: the system has detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

For further information:

Lane Change Assistant, see page 248.

Lane Change Assistant: functional requirements not met

Depending on the national-market version:

Grey arrow symbol for lane-changing: lane change not possible; operating requirements not met.

For further information:

Lane Change Assistant, see page 248.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

The system is active.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see page 246.

Blue lights

High-beam headlight

The high-beam headlight has been switched on.

For further information:

- High-beam headlight, see page 169.
- High-beam Assistant, see page 170.

Grey lights

Manual Speed Limiter

The system is interrupted.

For further information:

Manual Speed Limiter, see page 225.

Cruise Control

The system is interrupted.

For further information:

Cruise Control, see page 227.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Indicator light illuminates: the system is interrupted.

Indicator light flashes: the requirements for operation of the system are no longer being met. The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

For further information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, see page 230.

Steering and Lane Control Assistant

System is on standby and does not make any steering wheel movement.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

The system is interrupted and activates automatically as soon as all functional requirements are met.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see page 246.

Lane Departure Warning

Depending on equipment and national-market version:

Warning light is illuminated: the system is switched off or automatically deactivated, for example, because DSC OFF is activated.

Warning light flashes: a warning is issued actively. The system does not carry out any steering interventions.

For further information:

Lane Departure Warning, see page 196.

White lights

Cruise Control with Distance Control

No Distance Control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

For further information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, see page 230.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

The system can be activated.

For further information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see page 246.

Selection lists

Principle

The instrument cluster or the Head-up display can show lists for certain functions and can be used for operation where applicable.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- Recent calls list.

If applicable, the relevant menu is opened on the control display.

Displaying and using the list

The selection lists can be displayed and operated using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Operating elements	Function
	Turn the knurled wheel: display the entertainment list or scroll up or down in the list. Press the knurled wheel: confirm the selection.
	Press the corresponding arrow button to change the entertainment source.
	Display the last calls list.

Display

The selection lists, for example, entertainment sources, are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Example: selecting a radio station

1.  Press the button for entertainment sources.
2.  To switch to the list of radio stations, tilt the knurled wheel to the right.
3. Turn the knurled wheel to select a radio station.
4. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the selected radio station.

Example: changing the entertainment source

1.  Press the button for entertainment sources.
2.  Turn the knurled wheel to select an entertainment source.
3. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the selected entertainment source.

Optimum shift indicator

Principle

The optimum shift indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. The use of the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the optimum shift indicator is active in manual mode M.

Displays

Information on upshifting, downshifting or the engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster.

For vehicles without optimum shift indicator, the gear engaged is shown.

Example	Description
	In permanent manual mode M: Optimal gear is engaged.
	With shift paddles: temporary manual mode.
	With shift paddles: Sport programme.
	Switching instruction.

For further information:

Shift paddles, see page 137.

Power display

Principle

The power display indicates the currently drawn drive power as a percentage.

Activating/deactivating power display

Depending on the selected drive mode or the individually configured layout, the power display or revolution counter is displayed.

Display

Needle in the arrow 1 area: display of the energy recovery achieved, for example during deceleration, CHARGE.

Needle in the area of arrow 2: drive power as a percentage, POWER.

Reduced drive power

The available drive power may be reduced due to certain factors. The power display is automatically adjusted as necessary.

In addition, icons on the power display and in the revolution counter indicate if the drive power has been reduced.

Icon	Description
	Blue icon: cold drive system. White icon: increased drive system temperature, for example due to long-lasting or high power requirements when driving uphill.
	Depending on equipment and national-market version: Restriction of drive power set by BMW Digital Key.
	System-related functional limitation. A Check Control message will be shown as necessary.

Revolution counter

General

It is vital to avoid rotational speeds in the red warning zone. In this zone, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Activating/deactivating the revolution counter

The revolution counter is displayed depending on the selected drive mode or the individually configured layout.

The display of the revolution counter is variable and depends on the selected drive mode.

Reduced speed range

The available speed range may be reduced due certain factors, example a cold drivetrain. The revolution counter display is automatically adjusted depending on the available speed range.

Standby state and drive-ready state

OFF is shown in the instrument cluster. The drive-ready state is switched off and standby state switched on.

READY is shown in the instrument cluster. The Automatic Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

For further information:

- Vehicle operating condition, see page 48.
- Automatic Start/Stop function, see page 132.

Engine temperature

- Cold engine: the needle is in the blue temperature range, close to the limit position of the temperature display and the WARM-UP text is displayed.

  Drive at moderate rotational speed and vehicle speed.
- Normal operating temperature: the needle is located in the centre or left half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the needle is in the red temperature range. A Check Control message is also displayed.

For further information:

Coolant level, see page 364.

Outside temperature

General

If the display drops to +3 °C, 37 °F or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is shown.

There is an increased risk of black ice.

When the vehicle is stationary or when driving at low speeds, the displayed temperature may differ slightly from the actual outside temperature due to external environmental influences.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Even at temperatures above +3 °C, 37 °F there may be an increased risk of black ice, for example on bridges or on shaded sections of road. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. At low temperatures, adjust driving style to the weather conditions.

Shift Lights

Principle

Shift Lights indicate the suitable upshift point at which fast acceleration values can be achieved.

General

The Shift Lights are active in manual mode M and can be displayed in the instrument cluster or in the head-up display in combination with the revolution counter.

Functional prerequisites

- "SPORT": depending on the equipment, the drive mode must be selected.
- To display the shift lights in the head-up display, the sport view must be selected.
- Manual mode M must be activated.
- Advanced mode must be enabled.

For further information:

Advanced mode, see page 138.

Display

Yellow fields illuminate successively to indicate when a gearshift is due.

- Shift gear at the latest when all fields light up red.
- When the maximum engine speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the fuel supply is limited to protect the engine.

Central display area

Displayable content

The following settings can be selected:

- Reduced view.
- Trip data, see page 161.
- Assisted View, see page 163.
- Route preview of the navigation system.
- Map view of the navigation system.
- G-Meter, see page 164.
- Entertainment.
- Android Auto©.

  Depending on the equipment and national-market version, selected functions of a compatible smartphone can also be displayed, for example, map views.

Some contents for the central display area can also be configured as a view in the head-up display.

For further information:

Head-up display, see page 148.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication, see page 6.

Configuring the central display area

The contents for the central indication range in the instrument cluster can be individually configured, for example, the display of trip data.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.

   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "CONTENT"

   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel as necessary.
3. Select the required setting using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

Trip data

Principle

The display of trip data provides various information about the trip, e.g. the average consumption or the trip distance.

General

The trip data can be shown on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

Journey data is shown on the control display depending on the settings in the Live Vehicle menu.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Display on the control display

General

The following trip data is shown on the control display:

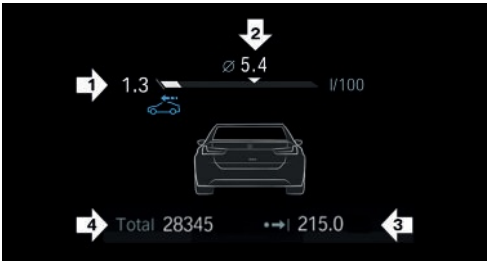
- Set interval for displaying the trip data.
- ∅ Average fuel consumption as a function of the set interval.
- Driving time depending on the set interval.
- Distance covered, depending on the set interval.
- The distance covered in the coasting drive state.

Displaying trip data continuously

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Journey data"

Display in the instrument cluster

Information on consumption and distance covered can be displayed on the instrument cluster.



- Current consumption, arrow 1.
- Average consumption, arrow 2.
- Distance covered depending on the configured interval, arrow 3.

  This icon is displayed when the vehicle is in coasting driving condition.
- Total kilometres, arrow 4.

Current consumption

The display of the current consumption allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g. for driving economically and in an environmentally friendly manner.

Mild hybrid technology: depending on the equipment, the fuel supply is interrupted when driving slowly or even when the vehicle is stationary and the engine continues to run. In this case, the combustion engine is electrically operated.

Average consumption

The average fuel consumption is displayed depending on the setting of the intervals for displaying the trip data.

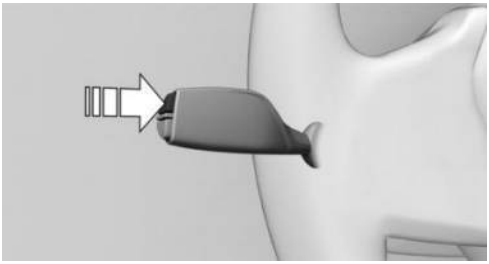
Configuring the journey data display

The intervals for displaying the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the control display can be configured.

Use the key on the left steering column lever:

1. Press the button.

The trip data is displayed.



2. Press the key repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed.

Via iDrive:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for journey data"
5. "Values"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Since start of journey": the values are reset automatically if the vehicle is at a standstill for approximately four hours.
   - "Since last refuel": the values are reset automatically after refuelling with a significant amount of fuel.
   - "Since factory": the values since leaving the factory are displayed.
   - "Since Individual": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

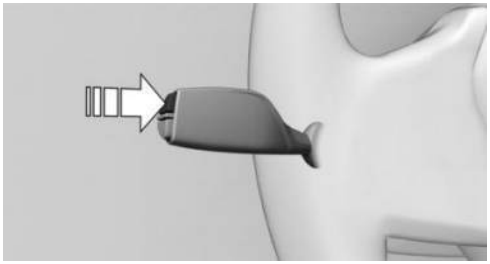
The following interval can be reset manually at any time:

"Since Individual ( )"

Use the key on the left steering column lever:

1. Press the button.

The trip data is displayed.



2. Press and hold the button until the values are reset.

Via iDrive:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for journey data"
5. "Reset Individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically activated:

"Since Individual ( )"

Assisted View

Principle

With Assisted View, information on driver assistance systems can be displayed on the instrument cluster with a vehicle animation.

Information on parking and manoeuvring is displayed in Assisted View whenever Park Assist is enabled.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

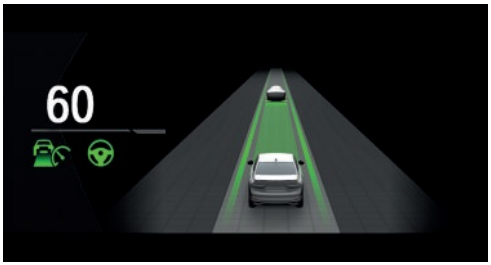
General

The Assisted View display can be configured in the central indication range and displayed.

For further information:

Central display area, see page 161.

Display



An example when driver assistance is active: the indicator and warning lights for Distance Control and Assisted Driving Mode are displayed. At the same time, Distance Control is animated in the Assisted View.

System limits

The detection capability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

The system may indicate something wrong.

For further information:

- Cameras, see page 43.
- Radar sensors, see page 44.

G-Meter

General

The G-Meter shows the longitudinal and lateral forces acting on the vehicle occupants during a journey.

The display can be configured in the central indication range of the instrument cluster.

The values are automatically reset after each start of the journey.

For further information:

Central display area, see page 161.

Manually resetting G-Meter values

1. Display G-Meter in the instrument cluster.
2.  Press and hold the knurled wheel on the steering wheel until the values are reset.

Date and time

Various settings can be configured for the display of date and time, for example the date format.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set or the automatic time setting can be activated. The automatic time setting automatically updates the time, date and, if necessary, the time zone.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"

4. "Date and time"
5. Select the desired settings.

Fuel level indicator

Principle

The current filling level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General

The vehicle inclination may cause the display to fluctuate.

For further information:

Refuelling, see page 324.

Display

An arrow next to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.

The current range is displayed as a numerical value.

Range

Principle

The range shows what distance can be covered with the amount of fuel currently in the tank.

General

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed briefly if the remaining range is low. A small remaining range means that the engine functions are not always ensured if a sporty driving style is employed, e.g. when cornering fast.

If the range drops below approximately 50 km, 30 miles the Check Control message is displayed continuously.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the range drops below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. The engine functions are no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

Display

The current range is displayed as a numerical value on the fuel level indicator.

Selecting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to select the units of measurement for various values, for example, consumption, distances and temperature.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired setting.

Vehicle status

General

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems, such as for Check Control.

Displaying the vehicle status

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"

Overview

Icon	Description
	"FLAT TYRE MONITOR": Status of the flat tyre monitor, see page 344.
	"Tyre Pressure Monitor": status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 337.
	"Engine oil level": Electronic oil measurement, see page 361.
	"AdBlue": BMW Diesel with BluePerformance, see page 357.
	"Check Control": to display saved Check Control messages, see page 149.
	"Service": Service notification display, see page 167.

Current driving condition

General

The current driving condition is displayed dynamically while driving in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following states can be displayed:

- Driving.
- Coasting driving condition: "EFFICIENT COASTING"
- "CHARGING BATTERY"

With mild hybrid technology:

- Adaptive recuperation.
- Efficient coasting with the engine switched off.

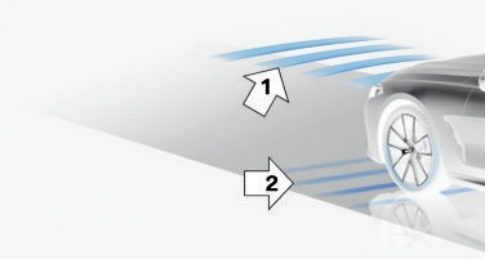
For further information:

- Adaptive recuperation, see page 321.
- Coasting, see page 322.

Operating requirements

- COMFORT or ECO PRO drive mode is selected.
- When using Live Vehicle, the following setting is selected: "Adaptive content".

Display



An example:

The adaptive recuperation is active, arrow 1.

The vehicle battery is charged when the vehicle is decelerating, arrow 2.

Sport displays

Principle

The sport displays primarily assist a sporty driving style.

Operating requirements

- SPORT drive mode is selected.
- When using Live Vehicle, the following setting is selected: "Adaptive content"

Display

The sport displays are displayed in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following information is displayed:

- Torque.
- Power.
- Charging pressure.
- Engine oil temperature.

Service

Principle

Service notifications indicate necessary maintenance work.

General

After switching on, the next service appointment or the distance remaining until your next servicing is displayed briefly on the instrument cluster if necessary.

Maintenance work can be read out from the vehicle key by a service advisor.

Display

More detailed information can be displayed on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service"

   Necessary maintenance measures and any statutory inspections are displayed.
5. Select the desired entry.

Entering deadlines

Dates for mandatory vehicle inspections can be entered.

Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service"
5. "Vehicle inspection"
6. "Date:"
7. Select the desired setting.

Service history

Principle

Completed maintenance work can be displayed on the control display.

General

Have maintenance work carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. The maintenance work carried out is entered in the vehicle data. The function is available as soon as a maintenance visit has been logged in the vehicle data.

Displays

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service"

   Necessary maintenance measures and any statutory inspections are displayed.
5. "Service history"
6. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Icons

Icon	Description
	Maintenance has been carried out on time.
	Maintenance has been carried out later than scheduled.
	Maintenance has not been carried out.

Light and vision

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

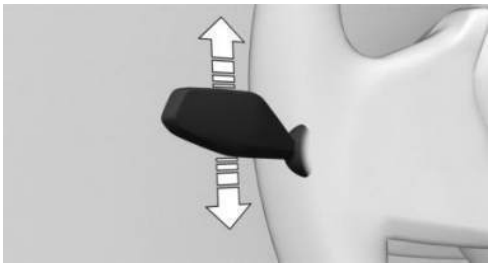
Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Turn indicators

Turn indicator in exterior mirror

To ensure that the indicator lamps in the exterior mirrors can be seen, do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving and while the turn indicators or hazard warning lights are operating.

Indicating



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

One-touch signalling

Briefly tap the lever up or down.

The duration of the one-touch signalling can be set.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "One-touch indicator"
6. Select the desired setting.

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlight, headlight flasher

Press the lever forwards or pull it back.

- ▷ High-beam headlight on, arrow 1.

  The high-beam headlight is illuminated when the low-beam headlight is switched on.
- ▷ High-beam headlight off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the high-beam headlight is switched on.

High-beam Assistant

Principle

High-beam Assistant detects other road users in good time and activates or deactivates the high-beam according to the traffic situation.

General

High-beam Assistant ensures that the high-beam headlight is switched on when the traffic situation allows. The system does not switch on the high-beam headlight in the low speed range.

The system responds to the lights of oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for example in built-up areas.

The high-beam headlight can be switched on and off manually at any time.

If equipped with Selective Beam, the high-beam headlight is not switched off for oncoming vehicles or vehicles driving ahead of you. Instead, the system masks only those areas of the beam which would otherwise dazzle oncoming traffic or traffic driving ahead. In this case, the blue indicator light continues to illuminate.

Depending on the equipment: if the headlights have been converted, High-beam Assistant may only function to a restricted extent.

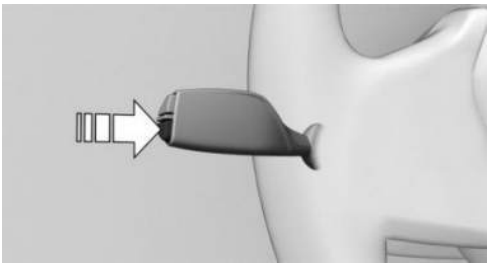
For further information:

Left-hand/right-hand traffic, see page 176.

Operating requirements

- Automatic driving lights are activated.
- The low-beam headlight is switched on.

Activating High-beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlight is switched on.

The system will switch automatically between low-beam headlight and high-beam headlight.

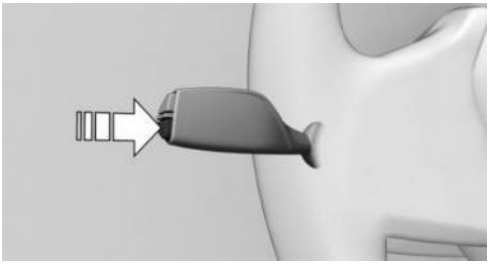
The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates if the high-beam headlight is switched on by the system.

If a journey is interrupted with High-beam Assistant activated: when the journey is resumed, High-beam Assistant remains activated.

The High-beam Assistant is deactivated by switching the high-beams on and off manually.

To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Deactivating High-beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

System limits

High-beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's own judgement as to when to use the high-beam headlight. Therefore activate the dipped headlights manually if the situation requires it.

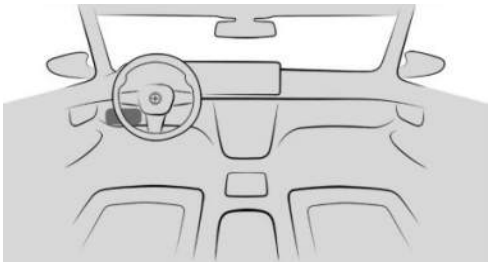
In the following situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be restricted and your intervention may be required:

- In extremely adverse weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horse riders or carriages and when trains or ships are close to the road, or when animals are crossing the road.
- On tight bends, on steep brows or hollows of hills, when there is crossing traffic or if the view of oncoming vehicles on a motorway is partly obstructed.
- In poorly lit towns or where there are highly reflective signs.
- If the area of windscreen in front of the interior mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.

Exterior lights

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Icon	Function
	Rear fog light.
OFF	Exterior lights off. Daytime driving lights.
	Side lights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights. Adaptive lighting functions.
	Low-beam headlight.
	Instrument lighting.
	Parking light, right.
	Parking light, left.

Buttons on the vehicle key

Icon	Function
	Interior lighting. Parts of the exterior lights.
	Home lights.

Automatic driving lights

Principle

Depending on ambient brightness, the system switches the low-beam headlight on or off automatically, for example in a tunnel, at twilight and in rain or snow.

General

The headlights may also be switched on when the sun is low against a blue sky.

If the low-beam headlight is switched on manually, the automatic driving lights are deactivated.

Activating the automatic driving lights

AUTO Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlight is switched on.

System limits

The automatic driving lights are no substitute for using your own judgement to assess the light conditions.

The sensors are unable to recognise fog or hazy weather, for example. In such situations, switch on the lights manually.

Side lights, low-beam headlights, and parking lights

General

If the driver's door is opened when drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lights are switched off automatically after a given time.

Side lights

Switching on the side lights

Press the button on the light switch.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

The vehicle is illuminated all round.

Do not leave the side lights on for extended periods of time, as this could drain the vehicle battery and it may no longer be possible to switch on the drive-ready state.

Switching off the side lights

The side lights can be switched off as follows:

- OFF Press the button on the light switch.
- Switch on drive-ready state.

  After switching on drive-ready state, the automatic driving lights function is activated.

Low-beam headlight

Switching on the low-beam headlight

Press the button on the light switch.

The low-beam headlight illuminates if the drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

To switch on the low-beam headlight as soon as the standby state is switched on, press the button again.

Switching off the low-beam headlight

Depending on the national-market version, the low-beam headlight may be switched off in the low speed range:

▷ OFF Press the button on the light switch.

Parking light

When parking the vehicle, it is possible to switch on a parking light on one side.

Button	Function
	Parking light, right on.
	Parking light, left on.

To switch off parking light:

OFF Press the button on the light switch or switch on drive-ready state.

Welcome light

Principle

With the welcome light, the exterior lights are automatically turned on for a limited time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

General

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lights of the vehicle can be individually adjusted.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on the equipment, select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"
     When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are turned on.
   - ▷ "BMW Iconic Glow"
     The radiator grille lighting settings are only available while at a standstill and with the drive-ready state switched off.

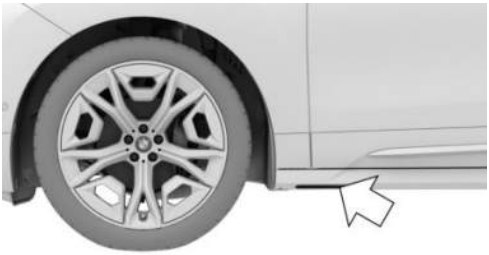
Turning on the welcome light

- ▷ Automatically on approach.
- ▷ During unlocking.
- ▷  With the vehicle locked, press the button on the vehicle key.

  Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

  The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

Welcome Light Carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Home lights

Principle

With the home lights, the exterior lights are automatically turned on for a limited time after leaving the vehicle in order to illuminate the area around the vehicle.

Switching on the home lights

- After switching off the drive-ready state, press the turn indicator lever forwards briefly.
-  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

Activate the home lights function for the button of the vehicle key:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Vehicle key"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the duration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "Home lights"
6. Select the desired setting.

Daytime driving lights

General

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the rear daytime driving lights are switched on.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are compulsory, in which case the daytime driving lights cannot be deactivated at the front.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on equipment or national-market version:
   - "Daytime driving lights"
   - "Rear daytime driving lights"

Dynamic ECO light function

General

In the low speed range, the brightness of the low-beam headlights is reduced.

Activating the dynamic ECO light function

1. 

If necessary, press the button on the light switch to activate the automatic driving lights.

   The LED in the button illuminates.
2. Activate ECO PRO drive mode.

   ECO PRO, see page 141.

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

Adaptive lighting functions makes it possible to illuminate the road responsively.

General

The adaptive lighting functions consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment:

- Variable light distribution.
- Cornering light.
- Roundabout light.

Activating the adaptive light functions

AUTO Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Variable light distribution

Principle

The variable light distribution enables better illumination of the road.

General

The light distribution is adjusted automatically depending on speed and navigation data, if necessary.

Urban lights

The light beam from the low-beam headlight is extended at the sides.

Motorway beam pattern

The range of the low-beam headlight is increased.

Cornering light

Principle

When turning off or on tight bends, for example hairpin bends, up to a certain speed, a cornering light is added to illuminate the inside area of the bend.

General

The cornering light is switched on automatically depending on the steering wheel angle or, where applicable, activation of the turn indicators.

When reversing, the cornering light is activated automatically irrespective of the steering wheel angle.

Hairpin lights

The cornering light is also switched on before entering hairpin bends.

Roundabout light

Shortly before driving onto a roundabout, the cornering light is activated on both sides. The edge of the road is illuminated more effectively. Shortly before exiting a roundabout, the cornering light is switched off again on both sides.

Adaptive headlight range control

Adaptive headlight range control compensates for acceleration and braking processes and load states to prevent oncoming vehicles from being dazzled.

Fog light

Rear fog light

Operating requirement

The low-beam headlight must be switched on before the rear fog light can be activated.

Switching the rear fog light on/off

Press the button.

The yellow indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the rear fog light is switched on.

If automatic driving lights have been activated, the low-beam headlight switches on automatically when the rear fog light is switched on.

Bad weather light

Principle

The bad weather light provides optimised illumination of the road when visibility conditions are poor, for example in fog or rain. The light distribution from the low-beam headlight is adapted to the visibility conditions.

Activating/deactivating the bad weather light

The bad weather light is activated when the automatic driving light system or the rear fog light is switched on.

Left-hand/right-hand traffic

General

When driving in countries where vehicles drive on the opposite side of the road to your vehicle's country of registration, you will need to prevent the dazzling effect of your headlights.

Converting the headlights

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "Right/left-hand traffic"
6. Select the desired setting.

   Depending on the national-market version, the parking brake must be applied.

System limits

The availability of the High-beam Assistant might be restricted.

The availability of the adaptive lighting functions might be restricted.

Instrument lighting

Operating requirement

The brightness can only be adjusted when the side lights or low-beam headlight are switched on.

Adjusting the brightness

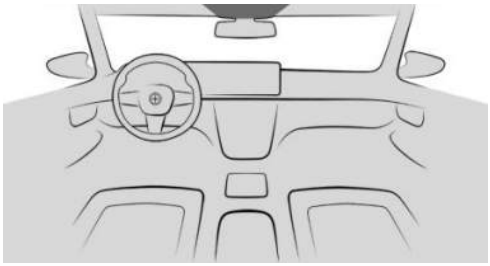
The brightness can be adjusted using the knurled wheel.

Interior lighting

General

Depending on the equipment, the interior lights, the footwell lights, door entry lighting, ambient lighting and loudspeaker lighting are controlled automatically.

Overview



Reading lights

Interior lights

Switching interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press and hold the button for approximately 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear can be switched on and off independently. The button is located on the headliner in the rear.

Switching reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the equipment, there are reading lights located at the front and in the rear beside the interior lights.

Ambient lighting

General

Depending on the equipment, the lighting for some of the interior lights can be adjusted.

Activating/deactivating ambient lighting

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Ambient lighting"

Turning ambient lighting on/off

The ambient lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient lighting was deactivated using iDrive, it is not switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the colour

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Colour"
6. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the brightness

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or open doors, are indicated by light effects. If the ambient light is deactivated, the light effects are still displayed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"

3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Dynamic light"
6. Select the desired setting.

Reduced for journey at night

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Reduced for night driving"

Wiper system

Safety information

WARNING

If the windscreen wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the windscreen wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

NOTICE

The wiper blades can wear out or become damaged prematurely when wiping on dry glass for longer periods of time. The wiper motor may overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the wipers when the glass is dry.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the windscreen wipers.

Switching on the wiper system

Press the lever upwards to the desired position.

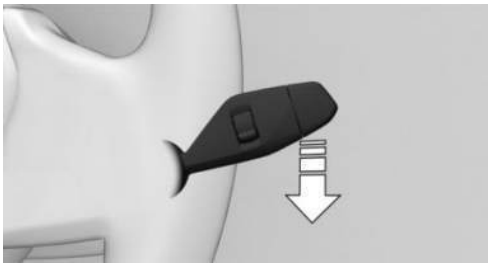
- Rest position of the windscreen wipers, position 0.
- Rain sensor mode, position 1.
- Normal wiper speed, position 2.

  When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to intermittent operation.
- Fast wiper speed, position 3.

  When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.

If a journey is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when the journey is resumed, the windscreen wipers continue operating at the previous level.

Switching off the wiper system and flick wiping



Press the lever down.

- To switch off: press lever downwards until position 0 is reached.
- To flick wipe: press the lever downwards from position 0.

  The lever returns to position 0 when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the rain intensity.

General

The sensor is mounted on the windscreen, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

In car washes, the wipers may inadvertently start moving if the rain sensor is activated. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating the rain sensor

Press the lever upwards once from position 0, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

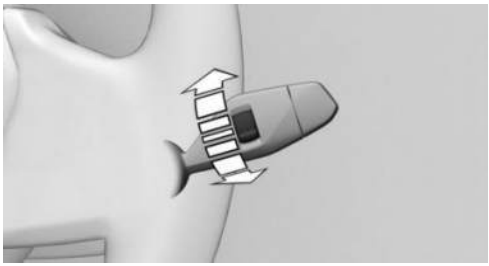
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

If there is frost, wiping operation may not start.

Deactivating the rain sensor

Press the lever back to position 0.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

- Upwards: high sensitivity of the rain sensor.
- Downwards: low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Window washer system

Safety information

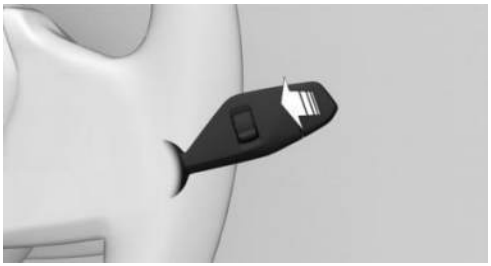
WARNING

At low temperatures, the washer fluid can freeze onto the windscreen and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only use the washer systems if there is no possibility of the washer fluid freezing. Use antifreeze additive if required.

NOTICE

If the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot operate as intended. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the washer system with the washer fluid reservoir empty.

Cleaning the windscreen



Pull the lever.

The washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen directly in front of the wiper blade as the wipers move up.

Windscreen wipers fold-out position

Principle

The wipers can be folded out from the windscreen in the fold-out position. This is necessary for example when replacing the wiper blades or to keep them away from the windscreen when there is frost.

Safety information

WARNING

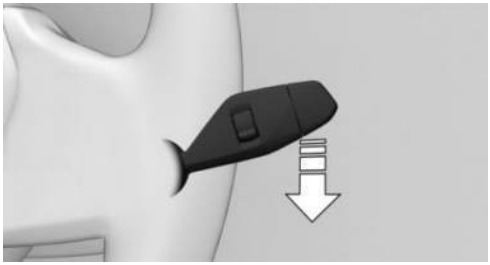
If the windscreen wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the windscreen wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the windscreen wipers.

Folding out the windscreen wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press the wiper lever down and hold until the windscreen wipers stop in an approximately vertical position.



3. Lift the windscreen wipers completely away from the windscreen.

Folding down the windscreen wipers

1. Fold the windscreen wipers fully down onto the windscreen.
2. Switch on the standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

   The windscreen wipers move back to the rest position and are operational once again.

Safety

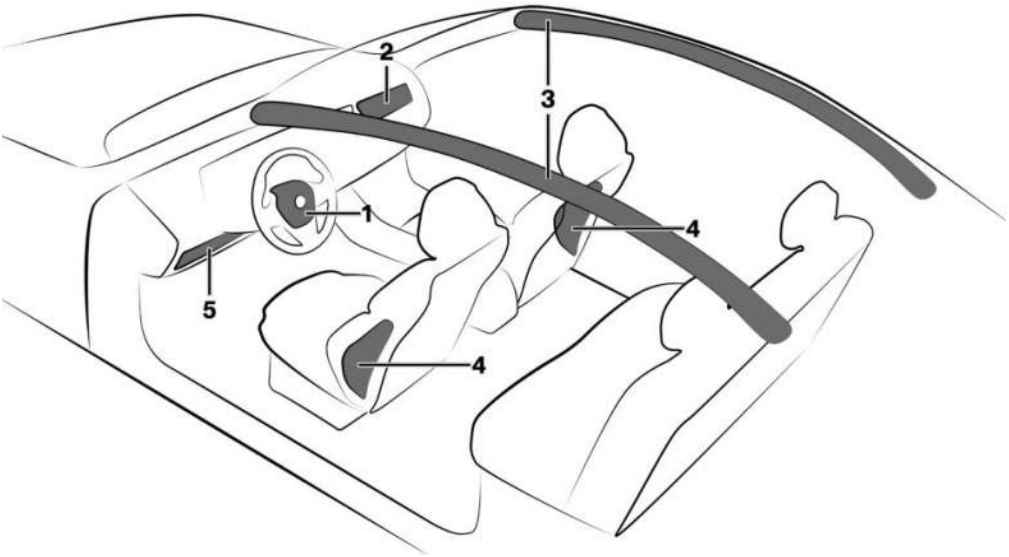
Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision where the protection of the seat belts alone would no longer be sufficient.

Side airbag

In a side collision, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and pelvic area.

Head airbag

The head airbag protects the head in the event of a side collision.

Knee airbag

The availability of the knee airbag depends on the national-market version.

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a head-on collision.

Protective effect

General

Airbags are not activated in every collision situation, for example, in minor accidents.

Information for optimum airbag protective effect

⚠ WARNING

If a seat is in the wrong position, seat belts are not fastened correctly, or the airbag deployment zone is restricted, the airbag system will not be able to provide the intended level of protection and may cause additional injury when deployed. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Observe the following for optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Fasten seat belts correctly.
- Always grip the steering wheel at the steering wheel rim. Place your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injury to hands or arms when the airbag deploys.
- Adjust the seat and steering wheel so the driver can reach over the steering wheel diagonally. Select the settings so that, when reaching over, the shoulders stay in contact with the backrest and the upper body stays as far away from the steering wheel as possible.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e. with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- Make sure that vehicle occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- Do not place any other persons, pets or objects between the airbags and occupants.
- Keep the dashboard and windscreen area on the passenger's side clear, for example do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for navigation devices or mobile phones.
- Do not glue the airbag covers and do not cover or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the front airbag cover on the passenger's side as a tray.
- Keep stowage compartments in the area of the airbags closed, for example the glove compartment or the centre armrest.
- Do not install seat covers, cushions or other objects on the front seats if they are not specifically designed for use on seats with integral airbag variants.
- Do not hang items of clothing, for example coats or jackets, over the backrests.
- Do not modify individual components or wiring. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and seats.
- Do not dismantle the airbag system.

Even if all this information is observed, injuries resulting from contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out in every situation.

The noise caused by the deployment of an airbag may lead to temporary hearing loss in the passengers or driver if they are sensitive to noise.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components of the airbag system may be hot after airbag deployment. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can cause the airbag system to fail, malfunction or deploy accidentally. If there is a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Have the airbag system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When the drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners are operational.

Malfunction

- The warning light does not illuminate after the drive-ready state is switched on.
- The warning light is permanently illuminated.

The airbag system or belt tensioners may be not functional. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Adjusting the front seat position

To maintain the accuracy of the seat position, calibrate the electric front seats as soon as a corresponding message is displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Seats, see page 106.

Key switch for front passenger airbag

Principle

When using a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated using the key switch for the front passenger airbag. The front passenger airbag can be deactivated and reactivated with the integrated key from the vehicle key.

General

The legal provisions determining which child seat is permitted for which age and body size may vary from country to country. Please comply with the relevant national legal provisions.

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is possible depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Overview

The key switch for front passenger airbag is located on the outside of the dashboard.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. With the key pressed inwards, turn the switch to the OFF position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the airbag is deactivated.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The driver airbag remains active.

If a rearward-facing child restraint system is removed from the front passenger seat, reactivate the front passenger airbag so that it can deploy as intended in the event of an accident.

The airbag status is shown by the indicator light in the headlining.

Activating the front passenger airbag

1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. With the key pressed inwards, turn the switch to the ON position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the airbag is activated.

The front passenger airbag is reactivated and deploys in appropriate situations.

Front passenger airbag indicator light

The indicator light for the front passenger airbag in the headliner shows the operating status of the front passenger airbag.

After switching on standby state, the light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

Display	Function
	When the front passenger airbag is activated, the indicator light illuminates for approx. 1 minute and then goes out.
	When the front passenger airbag is deactivated, the indicator light remains illuminated.

Check the status of the indicator light in the headliner before and also while driving when the front passenger seat is occupied.

Active pedestrian protection

Principle

The active pedestrian protection raises the bonnet if the front of the vehicle collides with a pedestrian.

General

When triggered, the pedestrian protection creates deformation space underneath the bonnet in readiness for the subsequent head impact. Sensors behind the bumper are used for detection.

The system's gas pressure springs are only approved for a certain period of time. Check the gas pressure springs during maintenance and replace them as necessary.

Safety information

WARNING

The system may trigger inadvertently if contact is made with individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Do not touch individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks.

WARNING

Modifications to the pedestrian protection can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the pedestrian protection system. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not modify the pedestrian protection, its individual components or its wiring. Do not dismantle the system.

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, malfunction or accidental triggering of the system. If there is a malfunction, the system might not trigger as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Have the system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the system has been triggered or is damaged, its functionality will be restricted or it may no longer work at all. There is a danger of injury or danger to life.

If the system has been triggered or is damaged, have it checked and replaced at an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTICE

Opening the bonnet when the pedestrian protection has triggered may damage the bonnet or the pedestrian protection. There is a risk of material damage. Do not open the bonnet after the Check Control message is displayed. Have it checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Display

If the active pedestrian protection has been triggered, an icon and a Check Control message are displayed.

Immediately drive at moderate speed to an authorised Service Partner or another qualified

Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the system checked and repaired.

System limits

The active pedestrian protection is triggered within a defined speed range of up to approx. 55 km/h, approx. 34 mph.

For safety reasons, the system may also trigger in rare instances where impact with a pedestrian cannot be excluded beyond all doubt, for example in the following situations:

- Collision with objects such as a skip or a boundary post.
- Collision with animals.
- Stone impact.
- Driving into a snow drift.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the active pedestrian protection, different messages are displayed.

An icon and a Check Control message are displayed.

Immediately drive at moderate speed to an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the system checked and repaired.

Collision warning systems

General

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle has different systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision warning with brake intervention, see page 188.
- Lane Departure Warning, see page 196.
- Lane Change Warning, see page 199.
- Side collision warning, see page 202.
- Rear collision warning, see page 204.
- Road Priority Warning, see page 205.
- Wrong-way Warning, see page 207.
- Emergency Stop Assistant, see page 208.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

⚠ WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windscreen.
- Front radar sensor.

- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Turning on/turning off collision warning systems

Depending on the national-market version, some of the systems are automatically active after every driving off.

The following functions are adjustable.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. Select the desired settings.

Resetting settings

The settings of the collision warning systems can be reset to the default settings for vehicle delivery.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Reset to recommended settings"

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limits, the system may either not react or react too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage.

Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection capability

The detection capability of the system is limited.

The system only takes into account objects within the detection range of the installed sensors and that are detected by the system.

Depending on the equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Front collision warning with brake intervention

Principle

The front collision warning can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system may help reduce the severity of the accident.

The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and may activate the brakes independently.

General

Depending on the equipment version, the front collision warning system includes the following functions:

- Collision Warning with braking function, see page 191.
- Pedestrian Warning with city braking function, see page 192.

- Crossroads Warning with city braking function, see page 193.
- Evasion Assistant, see page 195.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windscreen.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Speed range

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 5 km/h, 3 mph.

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.

Some functions are deactivated earlier.

As soon as the speed drops below these values again, the system is activated.

Turning the front collision warning on/off

Switching on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every time the car is driven off.

Switching the system on manually

The system is activated when the warning time is set.

For further information:

Setting the warning time, see page 190.

Switching the system off manually

Depending on the national-market version, the setting can only be made at a vehicle standstill or in the very low speed range.

If necessary, the switch-off must be confirmed successively on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Front collision warning"
7. "Off"

Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Front collision warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

The higher the sensitivity of the warning time settings, the more warnings are displayed. The system may therefore also issue more early or unfounded warnings and reactions.

The system checks for visual impairments. Depending on equipment, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster monitors the driver's gaze behaviour. Visibility conditions and field of vision also affect the timing of the warnings.

Display in the instrument cluster

The following indicator lights and warning lights are shown in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the head-up display:

Icon	Meaning
	Depending on equipment and national-market version: Functional limitation detected, for example, due to system limits of the cameras or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages. System limits of the cameras, see page 43.
	Depending on equipment and national-market version: The system is switched off.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a person, for example, a pedestrian.
	Risk of collision, for example, with a vehicle driving in front.
	Risk of collision, e.g. with a crossing vehicle from the right.
	Risk of collision, e.g. with a crossing vehicle from the left.
	Risk of collision with a vehicle from an unidentifiable direction of travel.

The display of the respective indicator light and warning light may vary because the system may detect multiple objects.

Warning function

The front collision warning warns on different warning levels, depending on the respective hazardous situation.

In the event of an advance warning, a warning light illuminates red. In the event of an acute warning, a warning light flashes red and an acoustic warning signal sounds.

In the event of a system warning, the driver must intervene immediately and in accordance with the situation.

- A red warning light is illuminated:

  A hazardous situation has been detected. Increased awareness is required.
- A red warning light flashes:

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene yourself immediately.
- A warning signal sounds:

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene yourself immediately.
- Automatic brake intervention:

Depending on the equipment and situation in case of an imminent danger of collision, the system can also intervene with an automatic brake intervention and automatically decelerate the vehicle, if necessary, to a complete standstill.

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake force of the vehicle is used.

Automatic brake intervention

In case of a risk of collision, the system can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a standstill.

In the event of automatic brake intervention, Dynamic Stability Control may be activated automatically.

A brake intervention can be cancelled by sufficiently stepping on the accelerator pedal, releasing the brake pedal or with an active steering wheel movement.

City braking function: brake intervention takes place at up to approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.

With radar sensor: brake intervention takes place at up to approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.

At speeds above approx. 210 km/h, 130 mph, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limits, the system may either not react or react too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection capability

The detection capability of the system is limited.

The system only takes into account objects within the detection range of the installed sensors and that are detected by the system.

Depending on the equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Functional limitations

The system may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- On tight bends.
- With restriction of the driving stability control systems.
- Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

In addition, do not use the front collision warning function when tow-starting or towing away.

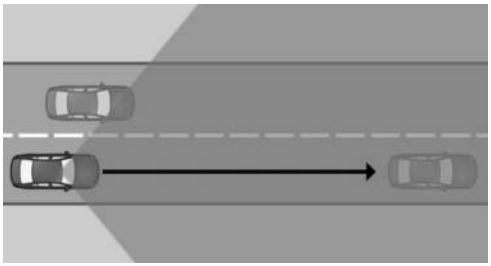
Collision Warning with braking function

Principle

The Collision Warning with braking function is a collision warning that warns of a possible risk of collision and brakes automatically if necessary.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 5 km/h, 3 mph. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The driver's own driving behaviour is taken into account in the responses of the system. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions are output less frequently.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in the chapter "Front collision warning".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Collision Warning with a detected vehicle.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene personally.

For further information:

Front collision warning, see page 188.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front collision warning".

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, or only detected with a delay, for instance:

- Slow driving vehicle in front being approached at high speed.
- Vehicles suddenly cutting in or decelerating heavily.
- Vehicles with unusual rear design.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

Upper speed limit

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph. Once the speed drops back below this threshold, the system becomes responsive again according to its settings.

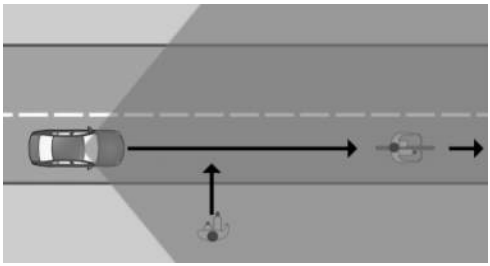
Pedestrian Warning with city braking function

Principle

The Pedestrian Warning with city braking function is a pedestrian warning that warns of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists and brakes automatically if necessary. The system warns of speeds that are common in towns and cities.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

At vehicle speeds greater than approx. 5 km/h, approx. 3 mph, this system warns of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians or cyclists.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in the chapter "Front collision warning".

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning light is displayed if there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian or cyclist.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a person, for example, a pedestrian.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene personally.

For further information:

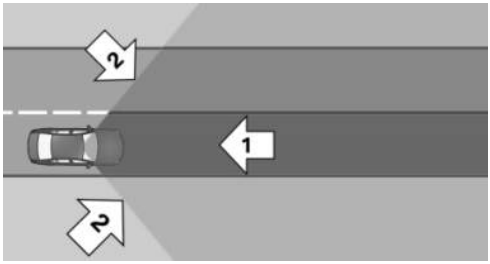
Front collision warning, see page 188.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front collision warning".

Detection range



The detection range in front of the vehicle consists of two parts:

- Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Extended zone, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

There is a risk of collision when persons, e.g. pedestrians or cyclists, are in the central zone. A warning is only given of persons in the extended zone if they are moving towards the central zone.

For example, the following might not be detected:

- Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- Persons who are not tall enough for detection by the sensors.

Upper speed limit

Depending on vehicle equipment, the system responds to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle speed is less than approx. 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

Crossroads Warning with city braking function

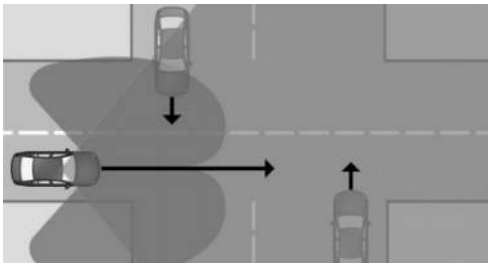
Principle

The Crossroads Warning with city braking function is a crossroads warning that helps to

prevent accidents with crossing traffic at crossroads and junctions. The system warns of the risk of collision at speeds that are common in towns and cities and brakes automatically if necessary.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Vehicles that cross the vehicle's direction of travel can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter the detection range of the sensors.

A warning is given at road junctions and crossroads if there is a risk of collision with crossing traffic.

From speeds of approximately 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph, the system provides a warning of possible risk of collision with vehicles.

The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in the chapter "Front collision warning".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with crossing vehicle from right.
	Risk of collision with crossing vehicle from left.
	Risk of collision with vehicle from an unidentifiable direction of travel.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene personally.

For further information:

Front collision warning, see page 188.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front collision warning".

Detection range

For example, the following might not be detected:

- Crossing vehicles concealed by buildings, for example.
- Vehicles with an unusual side appearance.
- Vehicles in highly dynamic driving situations.
- Vehicles suddenly cutting in or decelerating heavily.
- Crossing two-wheeled vehicles.

Upper speed limit

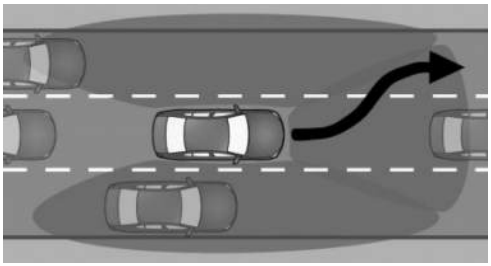
The system responds to crossing vehicles when your own speed is below approx. 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

Evasion Assistant

Principle

The Evasion Assistant can support the driver in making evasive manoeuvres in certain situations, for example, when obstacles or persons suddenly appear.

General



The system issues warnings and intervenes to provide support if there is a possibility to take an avoidance manoeuvre to the side.

Sensors monitor and detect the space around the vehicle.

The system uses detected free space for the evasive manoeuvre by safely supporting the steering manoeuvre carried out by the driver.

Safety information

Follow the Safety Information in the chapter "Front collision warning".

Operating requirements

- Front collision warning is active.
- Sensors detect adequate space around the vehicle.

Speed range

The Evasion Assistant supports the driver in a speed range from approx. 30 km/h, 19 mph up to 160 km/h, 100 mph.

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning light is displayed if there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle or person, e.g. pedestrian.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning when a vehicle is detected.
	Risk of collision with a pedestrian.

Warning function with evasion support

If the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed, a warning is displayed if there is an immediate risk of collision.

Intervene in case of a warning.

The system provides support for the driver's avoidance manoeuvres if there is a risk of collision.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Front collision warning".

Detection range

For example, the following might not be detected:

- Slow driving vehicle in front being approached at high speed.
- Vehicles suddenly cutting in or decelerating heavily.
- Vehicles with unusual rear design.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.
- Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.

- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- Persons who are not tall enough for detection by the sensors.

Function limitation

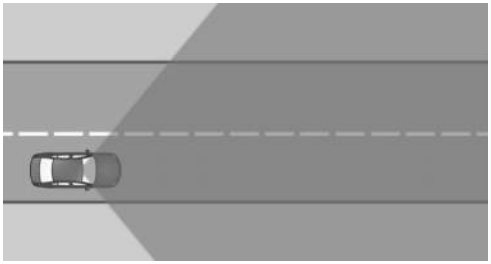
The system is deactivated when the trailer socket is occupied or when the trailer operation is activated, for example when operating with a trailer or rear bike carrier.

Lane Departure Warning

Principle

The Lane Departure Warning issues a warning if the vehicle leaves the road or its driving lane.

General



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning starting at a minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

Various warning functions of the system help the driver to keep the vehicle in the driving lane.

The system does not issue a warning if the driver indicates in the corresponding direction before exiting the driving lane.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the layout of the road and the traffic situation. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. In the event of a warning, do not move the steering wheel unnecessarily abruptly.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirement

The lane marking must be detected by the camera in order for the Lane Departure Warning to be active.

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the camera behind the windscreen.

Turning the Lane Departure Warning on/off

Switching on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every time the car is driven off.

Switching the system on manually

The system is activated when the warning time is set.

For further information:

Setting the warning time, see page 197.

Switching the system off manually

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the switch-off must be confirmed successively on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane departure warning"
7. "Off"

Setting the Lane Departure Warning

Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane departure warning"
7. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Reduced"

Some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance when intentionally driving over driving lane lines in bends or with dynamic overtaking without use of a turn indicator.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: switch steering intervention on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane departure warning"
7. "Steering intervention"

Depending on the national-market version, steering intervention is automatically active whenever you drive off.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different system statuses are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Icon	Meaning
	The indicator light flashes green: the system actively issues a warning. If necessary, the system performs a steering intervention.
	The warning light is illuminated yellow: functional limitation detected, for example, due to low sun or system failure. It is possible to continue driving. Where applicable, observe the information from Check Control messages.
	The warning light flashes yellow: a warning is issued actively. The system does not carry out any steering interventions.
	The warning light is illuminated grey: the system is switched off or automatically deactivated, for example, because DSC OFF is activated.
	The warning light flashes grey: a warning is issued actively. The system does not carry out any steering interventions.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 163.

Warning function

General

Depending on the situation and speed, the Lane Departure Warning system has a variety of warning functions:

- Indicator lights and warning lights in the instrument cluster.
- Steering wheel vibration.
- Steering intervention.
- Acoustic warning.

Steering wheel vibration

If the vehicle leaves the driving lane and a lane boundary is detected, the steering wheel vibrates depending on the steering wheel vibration setting.

If the turn indicator is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing lanes, no warning is issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version and equipment: if a lane boundary is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, the system may respond with an active steering intervention in addition to the steering wheel vibration. The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in the driving lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

A light is displayed in the instrument cluster when there is an active steering intervention.

For example, steering intervention is suppressed in the following situations:

- If the vehicle is accelerating rapidly or braking heavily.
- When indicating.
- If the hazard warning lights are switched on.
- In driving situations with high driving dynamics.
- When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.
- Directly after a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- When actively weaving back to your own lane after overtaking.

Cancellation of the warning

For example, the warning or an active steering intervention is cancelled in the following situations:

- Automatically after a few seconds.
- On returning to the correct lane.
- If the vehicle is accelerating rapidly or braking heavily.
- If the hazard warning lights are switched on.
- When indicating.
- When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- Directly after a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- With manual steering intervention.
- Possibly when another driver assistance system is activated.
- No lane boundary detected.
- When the system limits are reached.

Warning signal

An acoustic warning sounds if the driver does not steer themselves after the Lane Departure Warning system has performed active steering interventions several times within three minutes.

- A short acoustic warning sounds after the second steering intervention.
- An extended acoustic warning sounds after the third steering intervention.

A Check Control message is also displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message advise to pay closer attention to the lane.

The extended acoustic warning is interrupted if the driver takes control of the steering.

In trailer operation

If the trailer socket is occupied or the trailer operation is activated, for example during operation with a trailer, no steering intervention takes place.

For further information:

Driving with a trailer or rear carrier, see page 314.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Functional limitations

The system may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane boundaries, for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- With lane boundaries that are not white.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.

A Check Control message may be displayed if functionality is restricted. Depending on the national-market version, a yellow warning light is also illuminated.

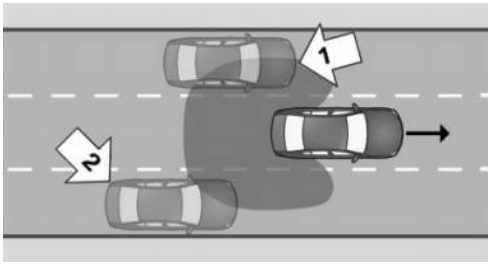
Lane Change Warning

Principle

Lane Change Warning detects vehicles in the blind spot, or if vehicles are approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns in different stages.

General



The system is operational after a minimum speed has been reached and uses radar sensors to monitor the area behind and adjacent to the vehicle.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed in the Lane Change Warning menu.

The system indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot, arrow 1, or are approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The warning light in the exterior mirror is illuminated at a dimmed level.

In the above situations, the system issues a warning before a lane change with the turn indicator activated. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

When turning at a speed of up to approx. 20 km/h, approx. 12 mph, the steering wheel will not vibrate.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windscreen.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

Operating requirement

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

Turning the Lane Change Warning on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane change warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the Lane Change Warning

Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane change warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: switch steering intervention on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane change warning"
7. "Steering intervention"

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 163.

Warning function

Warning light in the exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Advance warning

The dimmed warning light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot or are approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

In the event of an acute warning, the steering wheel vibrates briefly. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

An acute warning is issued if the following conditions are met:

- Another vehicle is located in the critical area.
- Your own vehicle is approaching the other lane.
- Depending on the system setting, when the turn indicator is turned on.

The warning is terminated when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn indicator has been switched off.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version: if there is no response to the steering wheel vibrations and a lane boundary is crossed at speeds of up to 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, the system responds with an active steering intervention if necessary. The steering intervention helps to return the vehicle to its driving lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

The steering intervention is carried out from a minimum speed. The minimum speed is displayed on the control display.

Brief flashing of the warning light

Brief flashing of the warning light in exterior mirror during vehicle unlocking serves as a system self-test.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Upper speed limit

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.

The system is activated again at speeds under approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.

Warning displays

Depending on the selected setting for the warnings, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. As a result, there may also be an increased number of premature warnings about critical situations.

Functional limitations

The system may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- The speed of the approaching vehicle is much faster than your own speed.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention may be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane boundaries, for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- With lane boundaries that are not white.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- If the camera is impaired.
- Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message may be displayed if functionality is restricted. Depending on the national-market version, a yellow warning light is also illuminated.

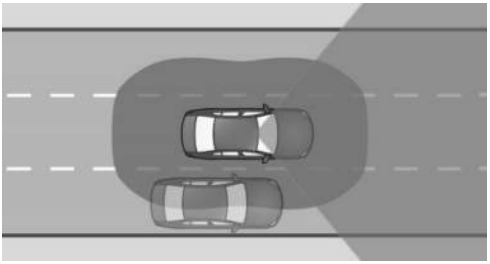
The system is inactive when the trailer socket is occupied or when the trailer operation is activated, for example, when operating with a trailer or rear bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Side collision warning

Principle

The side collision warning helps to avoid an imminent side collision.

General



Radar sensors monitor the area adjacent to the vehicle from a minimum speed up to approximately , 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

If another vehicle is detected adjacent to the vehicle – and there is a risk of a side collision – the system helps the driver to avoid a collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning with a flashing LED in the exterior mirror, a Check Control message and a vibrating steering wheel. An active steering intervention is performed by the system if necessary.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Operating requirement

The camera behind the windscreen detects the position of the lane boundaries.

The lane boundaries must be detected by the camera in order for the side collision warning with steering intervention to be active.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windscreen.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

Turning the side collision warning on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Side collision warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 163.

Warning function

Warning light in the exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel starts vibrating.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version, an active steering intervention takes place if necessary to prevent a collision and keep the vehicle in its own lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Functional limitations

The system may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- The speed of the approaching vehicle is much faster than your own speed.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- When there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous lane boundaries, for example, in areas where there are roadworks.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- With lane boundaries that are not white.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message may be displayed if functionality is restricted.

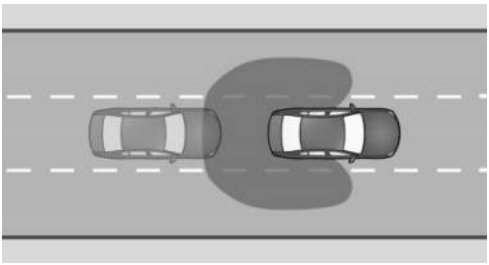
The system is inactive when the trailer socket is occupied or when the trailer operation is activated, for example, when operating with a trailer or rear bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Rear collision warning

Principle

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the rear collision warning can respond to vehicles approaching from behind.

General



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

If a vehicle is approaching from behind at a relevant speed, the system can respond as follows:

- The hazard warning lights are switched on if appropriate.
- PreCrash functions are triggered if appropriate.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Sensors

The system is controlled via the radar sensors at the side in the rear.

Switching rear collision warning on/off

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

The system is deactivated when reversing.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When reversing.
- If the trailer socket is occupied or trailer operation is activated, for example when operating with a trailer or rear bicycle carrier.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Functional limitations

The function may be restricted if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher or similar to the driver's own speed.

Road Priority Warning

Principle

The Road Priority Warning provides support in situations where road signs or traffic lights indicate that the driver must give way.

General

The system uses a camera behind the windscreen to evaluate the road signs and traffic lights.

The navigation system forwards information regarding the road layout to the system.

A warning is given if a right-of-way is about to be violated in the following traffic situations, for example:

- At a road junction.
- At a T-junction.
- On an entry slip road.
- At a roundabout.
- In the event of a red traffic light.

Starting from a variable minimum speed, the system issues warnings from and up to approximately 75 km/h, approx. 47 mph.

The following road signs are taken into account for the Road Priority Warning:

Signs	Meaning
	Give way signs: An advance warning is issued for these road signs.
	Stop signs: An advance warning and an acute warning are issued for these road signs.
	Red traffic lights result in output of an advance warning and an acute warning.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Operating requirement

The road priority situation must be unambiguously directed by road signs or light signal systems.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the camera behind the windscreen.

Turning the Road Priority Warning on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Road Priority Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"

4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Road Priority Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.

The selected setting is saved and adopted for the next journey.

Warning function

General

The system outputs warnings in two stages:

- Advance warning: visually by means of an icon in the instrument cluster.
- Acute warning: visually by means of an icon in the instrument cluster and with an additional acoustic signal.

The timing of the warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation and the set warning time.

Advance warning

If there is a risk that road priority is about to be ignored, one of the following icons appears in the instrument cluster:

Icon	Meaning
	Give way.
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When an advance warning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Acute warning

If there is an imminent risk that right-of-way is about to be ignored, an acoustic signal sounds and one of the following icons appears in the instrument cluster:

Icon	Meaning
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When an acute warning is issued, immediately intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Display in the head-up display

Depending on the equipment, the warning is displayed in the head-up display at the same time as in the instrument cluster.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

No Warning

The system provides no warning in situations such as the following:

- In road priority situations without "Give Way" signs, "Stop" signs or red traffic lights.
- At road junctions with relevant traffic lights that illuminate yellow or green.

Functional limitations

The system may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- If road signs or light signal systems are unclear.
- If road signs or light signal systems are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- If road signs or light signal systems are difficult to read or rotated.

- If road signs or light signal systems are too small or too large.
- If road signs do not correspond to the standard.
- If road signs are detected that apply to a merging or parallel road.
- If the road signs or road layouts are specific to one country.
- At road junctions with flashing light signal systems.
- Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent is some countries.

Wrong-way Warning

Principle

The Wrong-way Warning issues a warning if the driver is about to drive the wrong-way, for example on motorways, roundabouts and one-way streets.

General

Depending on the equipment, the system will check the traffic situation based on navigation data and road signs.

The system will take into account road signs such as the following:

- No entry.
- Roundabout.
- Direction arrows: keep right/left signs.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

Operating requirement

The road layout ahead must be unambiguously indicated by road signs.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the camera behind the windscreen.

Turning Wrong-way Warning on/off

Depending on the national-market version, the Wrong-way Warning is automatically activated after each time a journey is started.

If Collision Warning with braking function is temporarily switched off, the Wrong-way Warning is also switched off.

Warning function

A warning is displayed and an acoustic signal sounds, for example when the vehicle is travelling in the wrong direction on a motorway, roundabout or one-way street.

Warnings are displayed in the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, in the head-up display.

System limits

General

Follow the limits of the system in the chapter "Collision warning systems".

No Warning

The system provides no warning if the road layout is not indicated by road signs, for example.

Functional limitations

The system may have restricted functionality, or give no Wrong-way Warning at all, in situations such as the following:

- If the road signs are ambiguous.
- If the road signs are fully or partially covered or soiled.
- If the road signs are poorly visible or twisted.
- If the road signs are too small or too large.
- If road signs do not correspond to the standard.
- If road signs are detected that apply to a merging or parallel road.
- If the road signs or road layouts are specific to one country.
- Up to 10 seconds after switching on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- It may not be possible to use the system in all countries.

Emergency Stop Assistant

Principle

If the driver can no longer drive the vehicle safely, the Emergency Stop Assistant helps to bring the vehicle to a safe standstill.

General

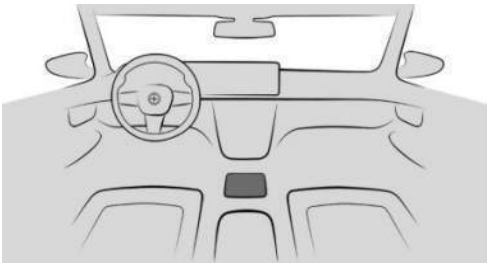
The Emergency Stop Assistant is not activated automatically. The system can only be activated manually by the vehicle occupants.

If the system is activated, the vehicle is brought to a standstill within its own lane by means of lane tracking.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the system may have a lane change function.

With lane change function: on motorways or similar roads, the system steers the vehicle to the hard shoulder if possible. On other roads or in heavy traffic, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in the road it is currently in.

Overview



Parking brake

Operating requirements

- The Emergency Stop Assistant can be activated at speeds of approx. 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph up to approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph.
- With lane change function: lane changes are performed if the traffic situation allows.

Activating the Emergency Stop Assistant

Briefly pull the parking brake switch to activate the Emergency Stop Assistant.

- With lane change function: when the switch is released, an automatic lane change is triggered if necessary.
- The system takes over vehicle control for a maximum of 2 minutes.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- Depending on the equipment, an emergency call is triggered at standstill.

Cancelling the Emergency Stop Assistant

At any time during the process, the driver can cancel the Emergency Stop Assistant function by actively taking control of the driving task.

The system is cancelled by the following actions, for example:

- By depressing the accelerator pedal.
- By operating the turn indicator.
- By switching off the hazard warning lights.
- By steering.
- By changing the selector lever position while at a standstill.
- By cancelling the emergency call.
- By pressing the auto hold brake switch.

When the vehicle is at a standstill

As soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, the system configures the following settings:

- The vehicle is secured to prevent it from rolling away.
- The interior lights are switched on.
- The central locking system is unlocked.

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Status
	Emergency Stop Assistant has triggered.

Without lane change function:

Icon	Status
	If lane boundaries are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Lane tracking interrupted briefly.
	Lane marking driven over. If lane boundaries are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Hands are not around the steering wheel. System remains active.
	The warning light is illuminated red and an acoustic signal sounds: hands are not holding the steering wheel. Interruption of lane tracking is imminent.
	The warning light is illuminated red and an acoustic signal sounds: tracking is switched off.

System limits

Only use the system if the driver is no longer able to operate the vehicle.

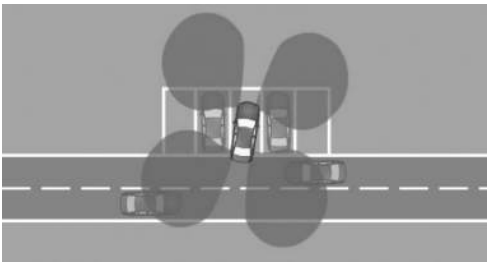
The system cannot replace the abilities of a safe driver.

Crossing-traffic Warning

Principle

At blind exits or when leaving bay parking spaces, the Crossing-traffic Warning detects other road users approaching from the side earlier than is possible from the driver's seat.

General



The area behind to the vehicle is monitored by sensors.

Depending on the equipment, the area in front of the vehicle is also monitored.

The system indicates when other road users are approaching.

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Depending on the equipment: side radar sensors, front.

Activating/deactivating Crossing-traffic Warning

For the Crossing-traffic Warning to switch on automatically, the system must be activated on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Parking and manoeuvring"
6. Depending on the equipment, select the desired setting:
   - "Rear warning"
   - "Front and rear warning"

Turning on the Crossing-traffic Warning automatically

The system must be activated on the control display. As soon as Park Distance Control or a camera view is active and a drive position is engaged, the system is automatically switched on.

The system is switched on at the rear when reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on the equipment, the front system is turned on when a drive position is engaged.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active when the vehicle is started.

Turning off the Crossing-traffic Warning automatically

The system is automatically turned off, for example, in the following situations:

- If walking speed is exceeded.
- When a certain distance covered is exceeded.

Warning function

General

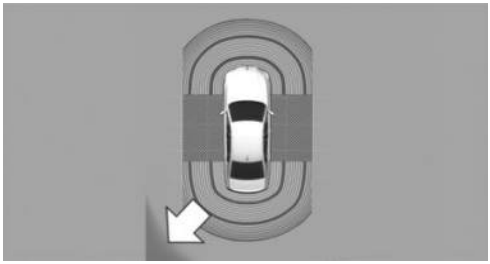
The control display shows the corresponding image, an acoustic signal may sound, and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes.

Visual warning

Warning light in the exterior mirror

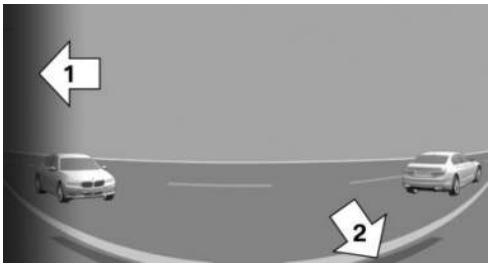
The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if other vehicles are detected by the rear sensors when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the relevant boundary area flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Depending on the equipment: display in the camera image



Depending on the direction of travel, the view to the front or rear is displayed in the camera image.

The relevant boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, indicate the bumper of your vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning, an acoustic signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

Depending on the national-market version, the acoustic signal will already sound when the drive position is engaged.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Functional limitations

The function can be restricted, for example, in the following situations:

- On tight bends.
- Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.

- Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.
- If the trailer socket is occupied or trailer operation is activated, the Crossing-traffic Warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

Dynamic brake lights

Principle

The brake lights flash to warn road users behind the vehicle that emergency braking is being performed.

General

- Normal braking: brake lights illuminate.
- Heavy braking: brake lights flash.

Shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated.

To switch off the hazard warning lights:

- Accelerate.
- Press the hazard warning lights button.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The BMW Drive Recorder saves short video recordings of the vehicle surroundings in order to document the traffic situation, for example.

Vehicle equipment

This system may not be available in the vehicle in question, for example due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the possibility of subsequent enabling and software updates. This also applies to the individual functions of the system.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

General

Video recordings can be saved in different ways:

- Automatic saving of recordings.

  The function makes it possible to document the accident with the correspondingly set recording type.
- Manual saving of recordings.

  The function makes it possible to document the traffic situation with the correspondingly set recording type.

The cameras of the assistance systems are used for recording, e.g. panorama view.

In addition, the following journey parameters are saved:

- Date.
- Time.
- Speed.
- GPS coordinates.

Data protection

The reliability of the recording and the use of video recordings depend on the legal regulations in the country where the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and for complying with the provisions that apply in each case.

Before using the system for the first time, the vehicle manufacturer recommends checking that there are no legal or official restrictions on using the system in the state or country in

question. Additionally, the legality of using the system should be checked at regular intervals, especially if the vehicle frequently crosses borders.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed of the system. Information about the system must also be provided if the vehicle is passed on to anyone else.

Operating requirements

- Standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.
- BMW Drive Recorder is activated.
- Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- Recording type was selected.
- Recording duration was selected.

Activating/deactivating the BMW Drive Recorder

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before using the recording function for the first time.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. Accept Privacy Policy.
5. "Settings"
6. "Allow recording"
7. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

Automatic recording

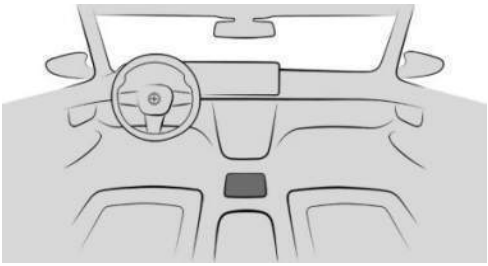
The recording is automatically saved when the vehicle sensors detect an accident.

The system saves recordings up to 20 seconds before and after the save function was triggered.

If the vehicle accelerates rapidly, an automatic recording may occur.

Manual recording

Using the button



Press and hold the button.

Via iDrive

Start the recording:

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Recording"
5. "Start recording"

The system saves recordings up to 20 seconds before and after the save function was triggered.

Playing and managing recordings

Saved video recordings can be played, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, the video recording is only shown on the control display if the speed is below approximately 3 km/h, 2 mph. In the case of some national-market versions, the video recording is only shown with the parking brake applied or with the selector lever in position P.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"

4. "Recordings"
5. Select the desired recording.

If the cameras switched during the recording, it is possible to select different sections of the video.

Settings

Recording type

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording duration

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Cameras

Different cameras can be selected.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Drive Recorder"
4. "Settings"
5. "Cam. selection"
6. Select the desired camera.

"All": in the event of an accident, the system switches automatically.

If driver assistance systems are active, their camera views are automatically selected.

System limits

In the event of a serious accident, recordings may not be saved if, for example, the damage to the vehicle is too extensive or the power supply was interrupted.

In the case of USB drives that have been overwritten multiple times, there may be limitations when exporting recordings.

NTFS is the preferred file system for USB storage devices. There may be limitations when using other file systems.

Active Protection

Principle

In critical situations, Active Protection prepares the passengers and the vehicle for a potential imminent accident.

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, Active Protection consists of different PreCrash functions.

The system detects critical driving situations which could potentially lead to an accident. Such critical driving situations include:

- Full braking.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of some systems installed in the vehicle can – within the system limits – cause Active Protection to trigger:

- Collision Warning with braking function: automatic brake intervention.
- Collision Warning with braking function: brake power assistance.
- Rear collision warning: detects impending rear collisions.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits may mean that critical situations are not detected reliably or in good time. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Function

Depending on the equipment and requirements, in critical accident situations, the following individual functions become active as required:

- The windows are automatically closed.

  The windows remain cracked open.
- Automatic closure of the glass sunroof.

  The sun protection is also closed.
- Automatic positioning of the backrest of the front passenger seat.

Following a critical driving situation where no accident has occurred, the systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill without the driver having to intervene.

General

PostCrash iBrake can reduce the risk of another collision and its consequences.

At a standstill

Once the vehicle has come to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Decelerating the vehicle harder

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a standstill more quickly than is possible with automatic braking of PostCrash – iBrake.

To do so, brake quickly and firmly. The brake pressure is then higher than that achieved with automatic braking. Automatic braking of the PostCrash – iBrake is aborted.

Cancelling automatic braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to cancel automatic braking of PostCrash – iBrake, for example, if an avoidance manoeuvre is required.

Cancel automatic braking:

- By depressing the brake pedal slightly longer.
- By depressing the accelerator pedal slightly longer.

Attentiveness Assistant

Principle

The break recommendation of Attentiveness Assistant can detect decreasing attentiveness or the onset of fatigue in the driver on long monotonous journeys, for example on motorways. The function recommends taking a break.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess your physical condition correctly. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or may not be detected in good time. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Make sure that the driver is rested

and alert. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.

Break recommendation

Function

After departure, the break recommendation function adapts to the driver so that any decrease in attention or fatigue can be detected.

This process takes into account the following criteria, for example:

- Personal driving style, for example steering.
- Driving conditions, for example time of day, duration of journey.
- Depending on the equipment: attentiveness of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

The function is active from approx. 65 km/h, 40 mph and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Setting break recommendations

The break recommendation can be switched on and off and set via iDrive.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Attentiveness Assistant"
7. Select the desired setting.

Despite the function being switched off, some driver assistance systems may issue break recommendations.

Display

If the driver shows signs of decreasing attentiveness or of fatigue, a note is shown on the control display with the recommendation to take a break.

The following settings can be selected during the display.

The system is reset approximately 45 minutes after the vehicle is stopped. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

System limits

The Attentiveness Assistant may be restricted. If the system is restricted, no warning or a false warning is issued.

The break recommendation function may have restricted functionality in the following situations:

- If the time is set incorrectly.
- When the speed is predominantly below approx. 65 km/h, 40 mph.
- If a sporty driving style is adopted, for example sharp acceleration or fast cornering.
- In active driving situations, for example frequent lane changes.
- In poor road condition.
- In strong crosswinds.

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

A camera in the instrument cluster monitors the driver activity and, depending on the equipment, the driver's direction of view.

General

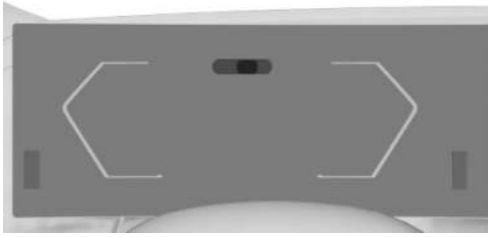
For support by assistance systems, the attention of the driver is analysed by evaluating the head position and eye opening of the driver.

Operating requirements

To guarantee full functionality, ensure that the Driver Attention Camera has an unobstructed field of view.

The steering wheel and driver's seat height must be adjusted so that the entire instrument cluster can be seen. The entire face can then be captured by the Driver Attention Camera.

Overview



Depending on the equipment, there are some infrared light sources in the instrument cluster. Depending on the light conditions, these light sources can be visible when the vehicle is in the standby state.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- If the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- If the driver is wearing sunglasses with high protection against infrared light.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Anti-lock Braking System

Principle

The Anti-lock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking during braking.

Manoeuvrability is retained even during full braking, which enhances active road safety.

General

The Anti-lock Braking System is ready whenever you switch on the drive-ready state.

Malfunction

The warning light in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

A Check Control message is shown.

- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is not available.
- The ease of steering is restricted in the event of full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Brake Assist

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly, Brake Assist automatically provides the maximum possible braking force assistance. This keeps the braking distance as short as possible in full braking situations.

In order to use the full braking force assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

Dynamic Stability Control helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course in critical driving situations. The drive power is reduced depending on the situation and individual wheels can be braked.

General

The system detects the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- Loss of traction at the rear which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of grip at the front wheels which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

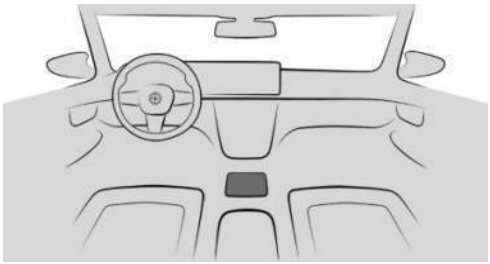
The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic

conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with roof bars, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Driving with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Overview



Dynamic Stability Control

Activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control

General

After switching on the drive-ready state, Dynamic Stability Control is activated automatically.

Driving stability when accelerating and cornering is restricted if Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

Deactivating/activating the system

1. Press the button to open the menu.
2. "DSC OFF"

   The Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
3. Press the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

DSC OFF

Display when Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Indicator light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Warning light pulsates: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving power and brake forces. The vehicle is being stabilised. Decrease speed and adjust driving style to the road conditions.

Warning light is illuminated: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is initialising. The driving stabilisation is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light is continuously illuminated, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Automatic programme change

Dynamic Stability Control can be activated automatically by the front collision warning, depending on the situation. Deactivate the front collision warning if necessary.

For further information:

Front collision warning with brake intervention, see page 188.

Dynamic Traction Control

Principle

Dynamic Traction Control is a drive-optimised variant of Dynamic Stability Control.

In special road conditions, for example on uncleared, snow-covered roads or on loose surfaces, the system ensures maximum propulsion, but with restricted driving stability.

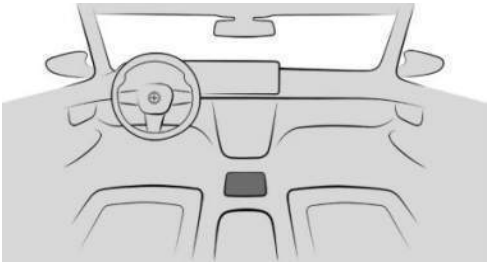
General

Maximum traction is provided when Dynamic Traction Control is activated. Driving stability is restricted when accelerating and cornering.

Activating Dynamic Traction Control briefly may be useful in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview



Dynamic Stability Control

Activating/deactivating Dynamic Traction Control

1. 

Press the button to open the menu.
2. "Traction"

Dynamic Traction Control is activated and Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

3. 

Press the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display when Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Indicator light is illuminated: Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Automatic programme change

In certain situations, Dynamic Stability Control is activated automatically:

- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control is activated.
- In case of a brake intervention by the front collision warning. Deactivate the front collision warning if necessary.
- If the suspension control system fails.
- In the event of a flat tyre.

For further information:

Front collision warning with brake intervention, see page 188.

BMW xDrive

Principle

BMW xDrive is the vehicle's all-wheel drive system. The interaction of BMW xDrive and other suspension control systems, for example, Dynamic Stability Control, further optimises traction and driving dynamics.

General

BMW xDrive distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axles according to the driving situation and road condition.

M Sport differential

The M Sport differential actively and steplessly locks the rear axle differential according to the driving situation. This prevents an individual rear wheel from spinning, thus providing optimum traction in all driving situations.

It is the driver's responsibility to adopt a driving style that is appropriate to the situation.

Servotronic

Principle

Servotronic is a speed-dependent steering assistance.

The system provides more steering force assistance at lower speeds than at higher speeds. This makes it easier to park, for example, and provides a firmer steering feel when driving at higher speeds.

Setting

The steering force adapts according to the drive mode, so that a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering behaviour is conveyed.

Variable sport steering

The variable sport steering facilitates direct and agile drivability with less steering effort. Irrespective of the current speed, the variable sport steering reacts to the steering wheel angle with varying steering ratios.

- In situations that require larger steering wheel movements, for example, when manoeuvring, turning off or turning round, small steering wheel movements already result in a larger wheel angle. As a result, the variable sport steering increases steering comfort due to the reduced steering effort.
- The wheel angle is reduced in situations that require minor or rapid corrections to the direction of travel in the higher speed range, for example, in the event of rapid evasive manoeuvres or crosswind corrections. In these cases, the variable sport steering increases driving stability for the steering wheel movements.

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Speed limit warning

Principle

The speed limit warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General

The warning is repeated if the set speed limit is exceeded again after dropping below it by 5 km/h, 3 mph.

Activating/deactivating the speed limit warning

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"

Setting the speed

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. "Warning above:"
8. Select the desired setting.

Setting the current speed as the speed limit warning

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. "Adopt current speed"

Speed Limit Display with no-overtaking indicator

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the head-up display and possibly supplementary signs.

General

The camera located near the interior mirror detects road signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead signs.

Depending on the national-market version, road signs with supplementary signs, for example, for wet road conditions, are taken into account and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, for example, the windscreen wiper signal. The road sign and associated supplementary signs are then displayed in the instru-

ment cluster and the head-up display, if applicable, or ignored, depending on the situation. Some supplementary signs are taken into account in the speed limit evaluation, but are not displayed in the instrument cluster.

The system may also show speed limits that apply to routes that are not marked if the navigation system has current map data.

In order for Speed Limit Info to function correctly, the current map data must be installed for the country in which the vehicle is operated.

For information on the current map version and map update, see Map update in the chapter Navigation system.

The system has certain technical limitations if no map data is available. Only road signs with speed limits are detected and displayed. Speed limits when driving into built-up areas and due to motorway signs, for example, are not displayed. Speed limits with text-based supplementary signs are always shown.

Speed limits for trailer operation are displayed when the trailer socket is occupied or when the trailer operation has been activated via iDrive.

For further information:

- Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication, see page 6.
- Trailer operation, see page 311.

No-overtaking indicator

Principle

Overtaking restriction signs and end of restriction signs which have been detected by the camera are indicated by corresponding icons in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the head-up display.

General

The system considers overtaking restrictions and ends of restrictions that are indicated by means of road signs.

It will not display anything in the following situations:

- In countries where overtaking restrictions are primarily shown by road markings.
- On routes without road signs.
- In the case of railway crossings, lane markings and other situations which indicate an overtaking restriction but which are not signposted to this effect.

Depending on the equipment, an additional icon with distance information may also be displayed to indicate the end of the no-overtaking indicator.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the camera behind the windscreen.

Display

General

Depending on the national-market version, supplementary signs and no-overtaking indicators are displayed together with Speed Limit Info.

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
	Present speed limit.
	No data available on the current speed limit.
	Speed Limit Info unavailable.

No-overtaking indicator

Icon	Description
	No overtaking.
	End of overtaking restriction.

Supplementary signs

Icon	Description
	Speed limit with time limit.
	The speed limit only applies in wet conditions.
	The speed limit only applies in snow.
	The speed limit only applies in fog.
	The speed limit applies for the exit junction on the left.
	The speed limit applies for the exit junction on the right.
	The speed limit only applies when towing a trailer.

Speed Limit Info with Anticipatory Indicator

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, an additional icon with remaining distance display may indicate that a change in speed limit is ahead. Predictive driving must be activated for Speed Limit Assist.

Temporary speed limits may also be displayed, for example at construction sites. Temporary speed limits can only be displayed if the following services are selected in the Privacy menu for the navigation system:

- "Learning map"
- "Map update"

For further information:

- Speed Limit Assist, see page 238.
- Data protection, see page 72.

Warning signals

Depending on the setting, an acoustic signal sounds if the detected speed limit is exceeded or the speed limit changes. In addition, the display pulsates if the detected speed limit is exceeded.

SET Depending on the national-market version, the visual and acoustic warning can be activated or deactivated via the SET button on the steering wheel.

Press and hold the SET button until a Check Control message is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the warning is automatically activated each time the vehicle is started for legal reasons.

Settings

Individual settings can be made for Speed Limit Info, for example, warnings if the speed is exceeded or if the permitted maximum speed changes.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"

3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. Select the desired setting.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

▷ Camera, see page 43.

Functional limitations

Functionality may be restricted or incorrect information may be displayed in some situations such as:

▷ Road signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
▷ Road signs do not correspond to the standard.
▷ In areas that are not included in the map data of the navigation system.
▷ In the event of invalid, outdated or unavailable map data of the navigation system.
▷ If there are navigation discrepancies, for example due to changes in road layout.
▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
▷ When overtaking buses or trucks with road sign stickers.
▷ If there are electronic road signs.
▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a parallel road.
▷ If the road signs or road layouts are specific to one country.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The Manual Speed Limiter can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

General

The system allows speeds of 30 km/h, 20 mph and above to be set as a speed limit. Below the set speed limit, the vehicle can be driven without restriction.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	System on/off.
SET	Store the current speed. Speed Limit Assist: accept the suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: To change the speed limit.

Operation

Switching on the speed limiter

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit.

When switching on at a standstill or driving at low speed, 30 km/h, 20 mph is set as the speed limit.

The speedometer marker is set to the appropriate speed.

When switching on the speed limit, Dynamic Stability Control may be switched on and the drive mode switched to COMFORT.

Switching off the speed limiter

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in situations such as the following:

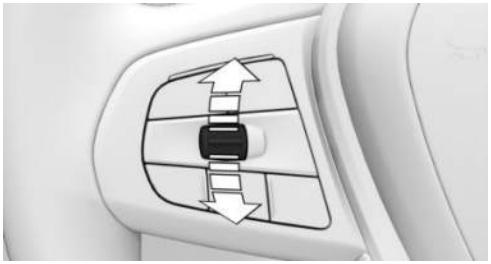
- When switching the engine off.
- When switching on Cruise Control.
- When activating some drive modes using Driving Experience Control.

The displays goes out.

To interrupt the speed limiter

The system is interrupted in reverse gear or when rolling backwards at idle.

Changing the speed limit



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed limit is set.

- Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the speed limit changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded, for example when driving downhill, there is no active brake intervention.

If you set a speed during the journey which is below the current speed, the vehicle decelerates to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing the button:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding of speed limit

The system gives a warning if the current speed exceeds the set speed limit.

You can intentionally exceed the speed limit.

To intentionally exceed the set speed limit, press the accelerator pedal all the way down.

The limit automatically becomes active again as soon as the current speed falls below the set speed limit.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning

If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes for as long as the set speed limit is exceeded.

Acoustic warning

- A warning sounds if you inadvertently exceed the set speed limit.
- If the speed limit is reduced to below the current speed during the journey, the signal sounds after a little time.
- No signal sounds if you intentionally exceed the speed limit by fully pressing the accelerator pedal.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

- Green marker: system is active.
- Grey mark: the system is interrupted.
- No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
LIM	Indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on. Indicator light flashes: set speed limit is exceeded.
LIM	Grey indicator light: the system is interrupted.

Cruise Control without Distance Control

Principle

Cruise Control allows a set speed to be specified using the buttons on the steering wheel. The set speed is then maintained by the system. It does this by automatically accelerating and braking the vehicle as necessary.

General

The system can be activated starting at 30 km/h, 20 mph.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas, for example acceleration in ECO PRO drive mode is less pronounced.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

The risk of accident may increase if the system is used in certain situations, such as:

- On stretches of road with many corners and bends.
- In heavy traffic.
- If the road is icy, if there is fog or snow, in wet conditions or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only use the system if it is possible to drive at a constant speed.

WARNING

The set speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
 	Cruise Control on/off.
RESUME	To resume Cruise Control with last setting.
CANCEL	To interrupt Cruise Control.
SET	Store the current speed. Speed Limit Assist: accept the suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: To set the speed.

Turning the Cruise Control on/off

Switching on the system


Depending on the equipment, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Switching the system off


Depending on the equipment, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

The displays goes out. The stored set speed is deleted.

To interrupt Cruise Control

Manually interrupting the system

CANCEL

Press the button while the system is activated.

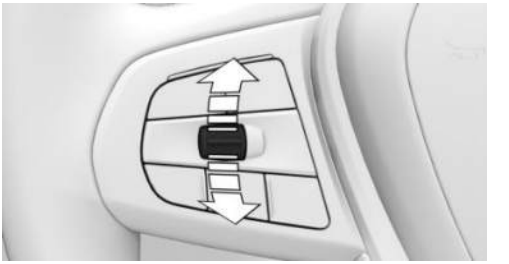
Interrupting the system automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When braking manually.
- Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When Dynamic Traction Control is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch up or down once.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

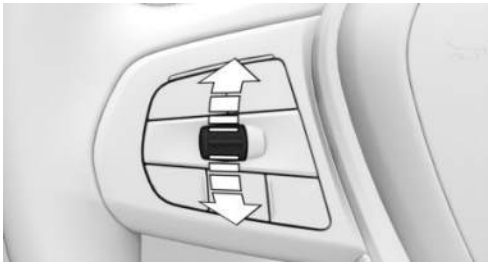
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing the button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the set speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the set speed changes by 10 in the km/h display or 5 in the mph display in the speedometer.

  The maximum speed which can be set depends on the vehicle.
- When the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point and then held there: the vehicle accelerates or decelerates without the need to press the accelerator pedal.

  When the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains the final speed. Pressing beyond the resistance point accelerates the vehicle more rapidly.

Resuming Cruise Control

⚠ WARNING

The set speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and saved speed should be as small as possible.

RESUME With the system interrupted, press the button.

Cruise Control is resumed with the stored values.

In the following instances, the stored speed value is deleted and therefore cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When the drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

- Green marker: system is active, the marker shows the set speed.
- Grey marker: system is interrupted; the marker shows the stored speed.
- No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
	No indicator light: the system is switched off.
	Green indicator light: the system is active.
	Grey indicator light: the system is interrupted.

Displays in the head-up display

Some information from the system can also be shown in the head-up display.

The icon is displayed when the selected set speed has been reached.

System limits

The set speed is also maintained when driving downhill. The vehicle may not achieve the set speed on uphill gradients if there is not enough drive power.

In ECO PRO drive mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the set speed setting in some situations, for example on downhill or uphill gradients.

Do not use Cruise Control when tow-starting or towing away.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Principle

Active Cruise Control allows the driver to specify a set speed and a desired distance from the vehicle in front, using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General

When the road ahead is clear, the system maintains the set speed. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If there is a vehicle driving in front, the system adapts the speed of your vehicle in order to maintain the set distance from the vehicle ahead. The speed is adapted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be set in several stages and for safety reasons is dependent on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill and drives off again shortly afterwards, the system is able to comprehend this as far as given conditions allow.

Otherwise, drive off yourself, for example by pressing the accelerator pedal or rocker switch on the steering wheel.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas, for example acceleration in ECO PRO drive mode is less pronounced.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and roll away. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it in order to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on uphill or downhill gradient.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradient, for example with a chock.

WARNING

The set speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

There is a risk of accident if the difference in speed relative to other vehicles is too great. This may occur, for example, in the following situations:

- When quickly approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- If another vehicle suddenly veers into the vehicle's own driving lane.
- When quickly approaching stationary vehicles.

There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	With Steering and Lane Control Assistant: Cruise Control on/off.
	With Steering and Lane Control Assistant: To select the function.
	Without Steering and Lane Control Assistant: Cruise Control on/off.
	Store the current speed. Speed Limit Assist: accept the suggested speed manually.
	With Steering and Lane Control Assistant: To interrupt Cruise Control. To resume Cruise Control with last setting.
	Without Steering and Lane Control Assistant: To resume Cruise Control with last setting.
	Without Steering and Lane Control Assistant: To interrupt Cruise Control.
	To increase the distance. To switch Distance Control on/off.

Button	Function
	To reduce the distance. To switch Distance Control on/off.
	Rocker switch: To set the speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windscreen.
- Front radar sensor.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Use

The system can be used to optimum effect on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 30 km/h, approx. 20 mph.

The maximum speed which can be set is limited and depends on the vehicle and its equipment, for example.

Higher set speeds can be selected by switching to Cruise Control without Distance Control.

The system can also be activated when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Do not use Cruise Control and Distance Control when tow-starting or towing away.

Turning the Cruise Control on/off or interrupting it

Steering and Lane Control Assistant: Assisted Driving Mode

General

The button is used to switch the set function on and off.

The button is used to set the primary function.

Setting the function

When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the toolbar. The Assisted Driving Mode toolbar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Icon	Function
	Cruise Control with Distance Control.
	Cruise Control with Distance Control and Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

The selected function is shown in green.

Switching on the system

With Steering and Lane Control Assistant:

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. 

Set Cruise Control if necessary.

Without Steering and Lane Control Assistant:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Switching the system off

When switching off with the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel:

With Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

Without Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

The displays goes out. The stored set speed is deleted.

Manually interrupting the system

With the system active, press the button on the steering wheel:

RES CANCEL With Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

CANCEL Without Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

If interrupting the system when the vehicle is at a standstill, depress the brake at the same time.

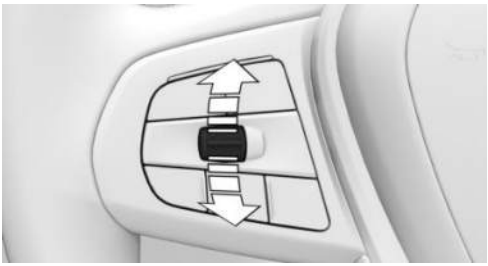
Interrupting the system automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When braking manually.
- Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When Dynamic Traction Control is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- When Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving stability.
- When the vehicle is stationary, the seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The system has not detected any objects for an extended period, for example, on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- The detection range of the radar is impaired, for example, by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- After an extended stationary period, if the vehicle was decelerated to a standstill by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch up or down once. The system is activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

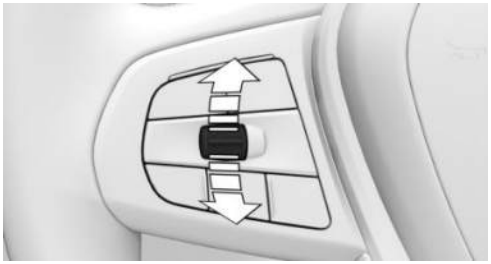
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing the button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the set speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the set speed changes by 10 in the km/h display or 5 in the mph display in the speedometer.

To repeat an action, hold the rocker switch in the relevant position.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limits may mean that deceleration is performed too late. There is a risk of accident and material damage. Pay close attention to the traffic situation at all times. Adapt the distance to suit traffic and weather conditions and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.

Reducing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Increasing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Adapting the distance automatically

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system can be configured so that the distance to the vehicle in front is adapted automatically. The system takes into account the traffic situation and ambient conditions, for example poor visibility.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. "Situational distance control"

Resuming Cruise Control

WARNING

The set speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed. The dif-

ference between the current speed and saved speed should be as small as possible.

With the system interrupted, press the button on the steering wheel:

RES CANCEL With Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

RESUME Without Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

Cruise Control is resumed with the stored values.

In the following instances, the stored speed value is deleted and therefore cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When the drive-ready state is switched off.

Switching between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

Safety information

WARNING

The system will not respond to traffic travelling in front of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake if necessary.

Switching the Cruise Control mode

To switch Cruise Control without Distance Control on and off:

-  Press and hold the button.
-  Press and hold the button.

With Steering and Lane Control Assistant: to switch on Distance Control:

 Press the button.

Without Steering and Lane Control Assistant: to switch on Distance Control:

-  Press the button.
-  Press the button.

After switching, a Check Control message is then displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General

Depending on the equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

- Green marker: system is active, the marker shows the set speed.
- Grey marker: system is interrupted; the marker shows the stored speed.
- No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Depending on the equipment:

Icon	Description
	White indicator light: No Distance Control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	The indicator light is illuminated green: Vehicle ahead detected. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected.
	The indicator light flashes green: The vehicle in front has started.
	The indicator light is illuminated grey: System interrupted.
	The indicator light flashes grey: The requirements for system operation are no longer being met. The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
	Warning light flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and take avoidance manoeuvre if necessary.

Assisted View

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 163.

Displays in the head-up display

Set speed

Some information from the system can also be shown in the head-up display.

The icon is displayed when the selected set speed has been reached.

Distance information

The icon is shown if your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.

The distance information is active under the following circumstances:

- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control is switched off.
- Display in the head-up display selected.

  Head-up display, see page 148.
- Distance too close.
- Speed above approximately 70 km/h, 40 mph.

With Steering and Lane Control Assistant: prevent overtaking

This function helps to prevent inadvertent overtaking on motorways.

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the system can be configured to prevent overtaking in the slower driving lane.

The setting applies to speeds over 80 km/h, 50 mph.

When the set speed is significantly higher than the speed in the adjacent lane, passing or overtaking may still be possible even if the function is switched on.

At speeds below 80 km/h, 50 mph, vehicles on motorways are only overtaken with an adjusted differential speed.

The driver can overtake or accelerate at any time by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Switching the function on/off:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"

4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. ▷ "Avoid overtaking on the left"
   ▷ "Avoid overtaking on the right"

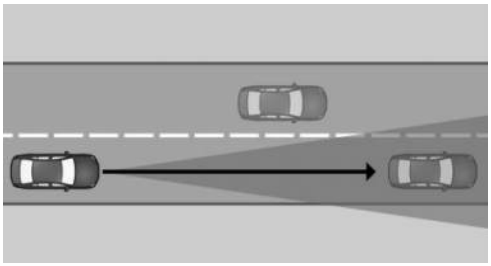
System limits

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- ▷ Cameras, see page 43.
- ▷ Radar sensors, see page 44.

Detection range



The system's detection capability and automatic braking capacity are limited.

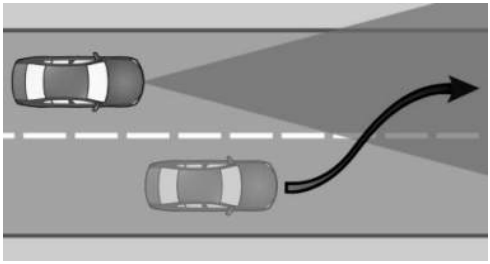
For example, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

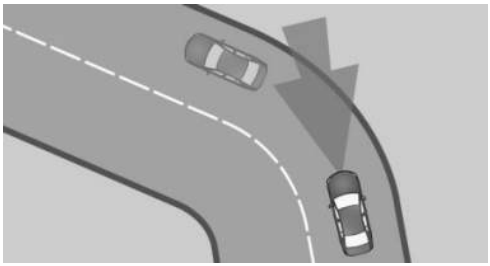
- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow road users.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment and national-market version at red traffic lights.
- ▷ For crossing traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming vehicles.

Vehicles cutting in



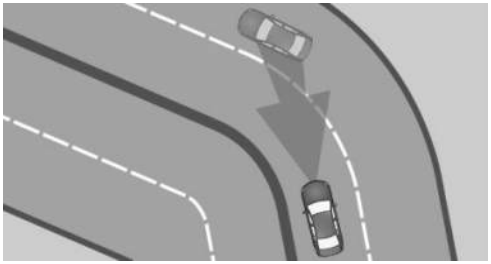
If another vehicle suddenly cuts in front of you, the system might not be able to restore the selected distance automatically. In some circumstances, it may also not be possible to restore the selected distance if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles in front, for example when rapidly approaching a lorry. If a vehicle is clearly detected in front of you, the system prompts you to intervene by braking, and if necessary by taking an avoidance manoeuvre.

Cornering



If the set speed is too high for cornering, it will be reduced slightly in the bend. However, since bends may not be anticipated in advance, moderate your speed when cornering.

The system has a restricted detection range. Situations can arise on tight bends where a vehicle driving in front will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When your vehicle is approaching a bend, the curvature may cause the system to respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. If the system responds by decelerating the vehicle, you may compensate for this by accelerating briefly. When the accelerator pedal is released again, the system will resume control of the vehicle's speed.

Driving off

The vehicle cannot drive off automatically in some situations, for example:

- On steep upward gradients.
- Before bumps or rises in the road.
- When towing a heavy trailer.

In such cases, press the accelerator pedal.

Weather

In adverse weather and lighting conditions, system functionality may be limited as follows:

- Impaired detection of vehicles.
- Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking an avoidance manoeuvre.

Drive power

The set speed is also maintained when driving downhill. The vehicle may not achieve the set speed on uphill gradients if there is not enough drive power.

In ECO PRO drive mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the set speed setting in some situations, for example on downhill or uphill gradients.

Speed Limit Assist

Principle

Speed Limit Assist helps the driver to observe speed limits. A suggested speed can be adopted.

General

When the systems in the vehicle, for example Speed Limit Info, detect a change in the speed limit, it is possible to adopt this new speed value for the following systems:

- Manual Speed Limiter.
- Cruise Control.
- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control.

The speed value is proposed as a new set speed for adopting. The relevant system must be activated for the speed value to be adopted.

Depending on the equipment, destination system and national-market version, the value may be applied automatically.

With traffic light detection: Speed Limit Assist controls the speed when the vehicle approaches red traffic lights.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at

any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

The set speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Accept the suggested speed manually. With traffic light detection: detected traffic lights are accepted manually.
	Rocker switch: To set the speed, see Cruise Control.

Switching Speed Limit Assist on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. "Speed limits"
8. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adjust automatically": depending on the equipment: detected speed limits are applied automatically.

     With traffic light detection: detected traffic lights are accepted automatically if possible.
   - "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.

     With traffic light detection: detected traffic lights can be accepted manually.
   - "Show anticipation": Depending on the national-market version: current and upcoming speed limits are displayed on the instrument cluster without being applied.
   - "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
   - "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assist will be turned off.

     Other proactive comfort functions – the Route-ahead Assistant, for example – may be switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when the system and a driver assistance system are activated.

Icon	Function
ASSIST	Depending on the equipment, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a Cruise Control System: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted manually for the displayed system.
60	Detected change in speed limit with immediate effect. Remaining distance display shown alongside the icon indicates there might be a change in the speed limit up ahead.
SET	Indicator light is illuminated green: the detected speed limit can be adopted with the SET button. With traffic light detection: detected traffic lights can be accepted with the SET button. A green tick is displayed once it has been adopted.

Automatic adoption

Depending on the equipment, a detected speed limit in automatic mode is automatically accepted for the Active Cruise Control with Distance Control or the Manual Speed Limiter.

SET After an automatic adoption, the button can be pressed to switch back to the last set value of the set speed.

With traffic light detection: detected traffic lights are accepted automatically if possible.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually for the active driver assistance system.

With traffic light detection: detected traffic lights can be accepted manually.

SET When the SET icon is illuminated, press the button.

Speed adjustment

Principle

It is possible to set whether the speed limit will be adopted exactly, or with a tolerance.

General

A speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 60 km/h, 40 mph can be set up.

The additional speed adjustment for speeds up to 60 km/h, 40 mph can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adjust speed limits": to set a speed adjustment tolerance that will affect all speeds.
   - "2nd adjustment up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adjustment.
   - "Adjust speed limits": with activated additional speed adjustment, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 60 km/h, 40 mph.

Adjusting to the route

Principle

Depending on the national-market version, the system can be configured so that the vehicle automatically adapts the speed to the route.

For example, the speed is reduced in the following situations if necessary:

- Before turning off.
- Before a roundabout.
- Before a bend.

Adapt speed automatically to route

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. "Adjust to route" or "Automatically adjust speed to route"

Depending on the equipment version: traffic light detection

Principle

Speed Limit Assist controls the speed when the vehicle approaches red traffic lights.

General

The camera near the interior mirror is used to detect red traffic lights.

If necessary, the system also uses the Driver Attention Camera and the information that has been saved in the navigation system.

Detected red traffic lights are displayed in the instrument cluster and, depending on the setting, can be taken into account by Speed Limit Assist either manually or automatically during the journey.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windscreen.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Operating requirements

- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control is activated.
- Speed up to approx. 80 km/h, 50 mph.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Activating/deactivating

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. "Consider traffic lights"

Drive off reminder

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. "Drive off reminder": when the vehicle is stopped at traffic lights, the detected phase of the lights can be displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, there will be visual and acoustic information as soon as driving can continue at a green traffic light.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Meaning
	Red traffic light detected. As soon as a green tick is displayed after adoption, the vehicle brakes to a standstill.
	Green traffic light detected. The symbol pulsates when a drive off reminder is issued.
	Grey traffic light: the system is interrupted. If the grey traffic light is displayed with a red cross, it cannot be offered for acceptance.

System limits

Speed Limit Assist is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Take into account the Speed Limit Info system limits.

Depending on the national-market version, upcoming speed limits may not be available for application or they may only be available to a certain extent, for instance information from the map data of the navigation system.

Cruise Control without Distance Control: depending on the system, it may not be possible to adopt speed limits automatically.

Upcoming speed limits can only be applied to Active Cruise Control with Distance Control.

The system does not respond at all or responds only to a limited extent on the route ahead in the following situations for example:

- If the position of the vehicle cannot be clearly determined by the navigation system.
- In wintry road conditions.

The traffic light detection system may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- Traffic lights are obscured, for example by other vehicles.
- At a road junction with multiple lanes where there are several sets of traffic lights.

For further information:

- Limits of the Speed Limit Information system, see page 225.
- System limits of the sensors, see page 43.

Steering and Lane Control Assistant

Principle

The Steering and Lane Control Assistant helps to keep the vehicle in the driving lane. It does this by performing supporting steering wheel movements, for example when cornering.

General

Depending on the speed, the system orientates itself using the lane markings and vehicles driving in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and Lane Control Assistant with traffic jam assistant on/off.
	To set the function.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windscreen.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Operating requirements

- Speed under 210 km/h, 130 mph.
- The lane width is sufficiently wide.
- Above 70 km/h, approx. 43 mph: lane boundaries are detected on both sides.
- Below 70 km/h, approx. 43 mph: lane boundaries on both sides or a vehicle driving in front is/are detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Sufficient corner radius.
- Driving in the centre of the driving lane.
- Turn indicator switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- Cruise Control with Distance Control active.
- Seat belt on the driver's side fastened.
- Collision Warning with braking function active.
- Pedestrian Warning with city braking function active.
- Side collision warning active.

Switching the Steering and Lane Control Assistant on/off

Assisted Driving Mode

General


The button is used to switch the set function on and off.


The button is used to set the primary function.

Setting the function


When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the toolbar. The Assisted Driving Mode toolbar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Icon	Function
	Cruise Control with Distance Control.
	Cruise Control with Distance Control and Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

The selected function is shown in green.

Switching on the system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2.  Adjust the Steering and Lane Control Assistant if necessary.

The indicator light is illuminated grey.

System is on standby and does not make any steering wheel movement.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

The indicator light illuminates green.

The system is active.

When the system is switched on, the Pedestrian Warning with city braking function and the side collision warning are active.

Switching the system off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The display is no longer illuminated.

The system does not perfom any supporting steering wheel movements.

Automatically interrupting Steering and Lane Control Assistant

The system interrupts the supporting steering movements automatically, for example in the following situations:

- At a speed above 210 km/h, 130 mph.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When braking manually.
- When the steering wheel is turned sharply.
- When the vehicle leaves its own driving lane.
- When the turn indicator is activated.
- When the driving lane is too narrow.
- If a lane boundary is not detected for a certain period of time and no vehicle is driving in front.
- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control is interrupted.
- The seat belt on the driver's side is unfastened.

The indicator light is illuminated grey.

System is on standby and does not make any steering wheel movement.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	The indicator light is illuminated grey: The system is ready.
	The indicator light is illuminated green: The system is activated. The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in the driving lane.
	The warning light flashes yellow: A lane boundary has been crossed. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	The warning light is illuminated yellow, a signal sounds where applicable: A system interruption is imminent.
	Depending on the national-market version: the warning light flashes or is illuminated red. A signal sounds: The system is switched off.

Icon	Description
	The warning light is illuminated yellow: Hands are not holding the steering wheel. System remains active.
	The warning light is illuminated red, a signal sounds: Hands are not holding the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. The system may possibly not perform any supporting steering wheel movements.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 163.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LEDs above the keypads are illuminated in the same way as the displays in the instrument cluster:

- Yellow: system interruption is imminent.
- Red: system is deactivated.

The steering wheel displays can be switched on/off if required.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Light elements"

Displays in the head-up display

All the system information can also be displayed in the head-up display.

System limits

General

This system cannot be activated or fully utilised in certain situations, e.g., when using a trailer.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limits, the system may either not react or react too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

- Cameras, see page 43.
- Radar sensors, see page 44.

Hands on the steering wheel

In the following situations, contact between the driver's hands and the steering wheel is not detected by the sensors:

- Driving when wearing gloves.
- Covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow driving lanes

The system cannot be activated or used usefully when driving in narrow driving lanes, for example in the following situations:

- At road works.
- Depending on the equipment, if emergency lanes are being formed.
- In built-up areas.

Weather

In adverse weather and lighting conditions, system functionality may be limited as follows:

- Impaired detection of vehicles and lane boundaries.
- Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking an avoidance manoeuvre.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

Principle

Assisted Driving Mode Plus helps the driver to control the vehicle in traffic queues.

The supporting steering wheel movements take place without the driver actively steering.

General

The system uses the sensors of the Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The information for the Steering and Lane Control Assistant also applies.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Operating requirements

- Operating requirements of the Steering and Lane Control Assistant are met.

  Operating requirements, see page 243.
- The Steering and Lane Control Assistant is active.
- The function is only available on certain types of road, for example motorways.
- Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists.
- The lane width is sufficiently wide.
- Lane markings and a vehicle ahead are detected.
- Speed below approx. 60 km/h, 40 mph.
- The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is looking at the traffic situation.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Switching on Assisted Driving Mode Plus

As soon as all of the operating requirements have been met, Assisted Driving Mode Plus is displayed as an additional icon in the toolbar. The toolbar is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Select Assisted Driving Mode Plus with the button on the steering wheel.

The icon for Assisted Driving Mode Plus is shown in green.

Two green LEDs are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is shown in green.

The system starts to help the driver to control the vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the function can be activated/deactivated on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Assisted Driving Plus"

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Green indicator light: the system is active.
	White indicator light: the system is ready.
	Grey indicator light: the system is interrupted.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LEDs above the keypads are illuminated in the same way as the displays in the instrument cluster:

- Green: the system is active.
- Yellow: the system has been interrupted.
- Red: the system is deactivated.

System limits

General

The system limits for the Steering and Lane Control Assistant apply.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Driver Attention Camera

The limits of the Driver Attention Camera system apply.

For further information:

Driver Attention Camera, see page 216.

Lane Change Assistant

Principle

The Lane Change Assistant also assists when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

General

The system uses the sensors of the Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The information for the Steering and Lane Control Assistant also applies.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Operating requirements

- Operating requirements of the Steering and Lane Control Assistant are met.

  Operating requirements, see page 243.
- Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers separating oncoming vehicles, for example crash barriers.
- Lane boundaries that can be driven over are detected.
- Maximum speed 180 km/h, approx. 110 mph.
- The minimum speed is country-specific.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

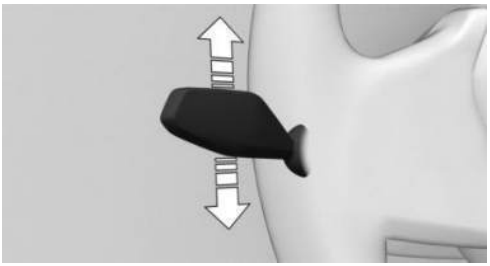
Turning on/turning off Lane Change Assistant

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Lane Change Assistant"

Changing driving lane

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits a lane change.
2. Press the turn indicator lever in the desired direction as far as the resistance point.

   After a short period, a supporting steering wheel movement in the desired direction is noticeable.



After the lane change, the system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane.

Cancelling a lane change

The lane change can be cancelled by steering in the opposite direction.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Green steering wheel icon. Green arrow icon for lane change. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel icon. Grey line for lane marking on the appropriate side. The system has detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on the national-market version: Green steering wheel icon. Grey arrow icon for lane change. Lane change not possible; operating requirements not met.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 163.

System limits

The system limits for the Steering and Lane Control Assistant apply.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Lane change with active route guidance

Principle

Lane change with active route guidance assists the driver when a lane change is needed in order to reach a destination.

General

The system uses the sensors of the Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The information for the Active Cruise Control and the Steering and Lane Control Assistant also applies.

For further information:

- Active Cruise Control, see page 230.
- Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Operating requirements

- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control is activated.
- Driving on a motorway or a similar road.
- A situation-dependent minimum speed has been reached.

- The system detects a sufficiently large gap in traffic in the adjacent lane.
- A lane boundary is detected on the side of the desired lane change.
- Navigation system: route guidance is activated.
- The adjustment to route is turned on.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Changing driving lane

If lane changes are necessary to reach a navigation destination, a corresponding message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

To change lanes, follow the instructions in the instrument cluster.

1.  The system detects a suitable gap in the flow of traffic in the adjacent lane. An icon with a green check mark is displayed in the instrument cluster. The system prepares for the lane change.
2. When a suitable gap has been found, the speed is adapted so the vehicle stays level with the gap.
3. A lane change suggestion is displayed with a Check Control message.
4. If the traffic situation permits a lane change, the driver can steer the vehicle into the adjacent lane.

   If the vehicle is equipped with the Lane Change Assistant: once the Check Control message has been displayed, the Lane Change Assistant can be started by operating the turn indicator.

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Function
	The suggested lane change is displayed. A green check mark on the icon indicates the active function.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 163.

Switching on adjustment to route

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Assistant"
7. "Adjust to route" or "Automatically adjust speed to route"

System limits

The system limits for the Active Cruise Control and the Steering and Lane Control Assistant apply.

Emergency Lane Assistant

Principle

The Emergency Lane Assistant can assist in traffic queues on motorways or motorway-like roads with the formation of an emergency lane.

As soon as the system detects a traffic queue, a Check Control message is shown on the control display. Depending on the situation, the vehicle will be steered to the right or left within

the current driving lane in order to form an emergency lane.

General

The system uses the sensors of the Steering and Lane Control Assistant.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

The information for the Steering and Lane Control Assistant also applies.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Operating requirements

- Steering and Lane Control Assistant is activated.
- Traffic queue detected.
- Driving on a motorway or a similar road.
- Lane boundary detected.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.

Activating/deactivating the Emergency Lane Assistant

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Assisted Driving"
7. "Emergency Corridor Assistant"

Displays in the instrument cluster

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the information from the system in Assisted View is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Assisted View, see page 163.

System limits

The system limits for the Steering and Lane Control Assistant apply.

For further information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, see page 242.

Parking

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Parking assistance systems

General

The parking assistance systems include different individual systems. The individual systems provide support with assistance functions, sensors and different camera views when parking, manoeuvring or driving in reverse.

For further information:

- Reversing Assist Camera, see page 257.
- Automatic camera perspective, see page 257.
- Flank view, see page 258.
- 3D view, see page 259.
- Zoom to trailer tow hitch, see page 259.
- Washing bay view, see page 259.
- Panorama View, see page 260.
- Door opening angle, see page 261.
- Remote 3D View, see page 262.
- Park Distance Control, see page 263.
- Active Park Distance Control, see page 266.
- Park Assist, see page 267.
- Reversing Assistant, see page 271.

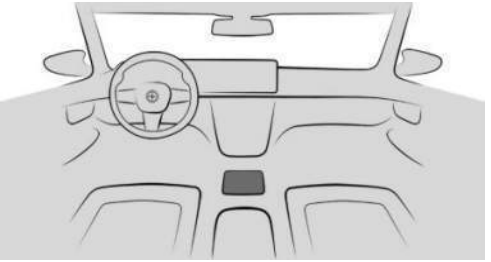
Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park Assist button

Panorama View

Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Side ultrasonic sensors.
- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Reversing Assist Camera.

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Operating concept

The camera-based individual systems are operated with the toolbars on the control display. Choose a camera view by selecting the appropriate icon.

In the Park menu, some parking assistance functions can be set individually.

It may be possible to operate some parking assistance systems with voice control, for example , parking with Park Assist.

For further information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, see page 61.

Go to Park menu

Via Parking Assistant button

1.  Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. Select the desired settings.

Via iDrive

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Parking and manoeuvring"
6. Select the desired settings.

Display

Principle

The parking assistance systems support parking and manoeuvring or reversing by displaying Park Distance Control and via various camera views.

General

Depending on vehicle equipment, one or more cameras record the area from different selectable perspectives.

Depending on the view, the vehicle surroundings or a partial area are displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the automatic camera perspective or the Reversing Assist Camera is displayed.

Turning the display on/off

General

When driving forwards, the parking assistance systems display turns off automatically when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

With the reverse gear

The display is automatically turned on if selector lever position R is engaged while drive-ready state is turned on.

With the Park Assist key

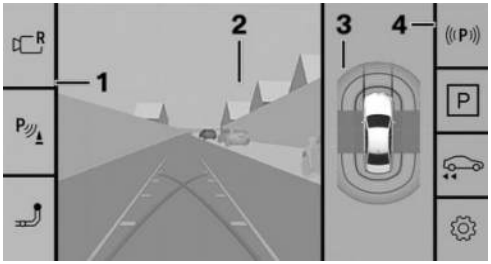
 Press the button.

Display on the control display

General

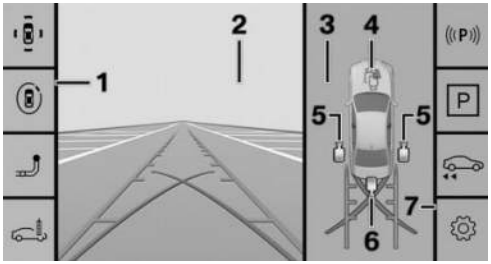
The display on the control display will vary depending on the equipment and the activated parking assistance system.

Without Parking Assistant Plus



1 Toolbar, left
2 Camera image
3 Top view of vehicle
4 Toolbar, right

With Parking Assistant Plus



1 Toolbar, left
2 Camera image
3 Selection window
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Side view
6 Reversing Assist Camera
7 Toolbar, right

Toolbar, left

Depending on the equipment, different views can be selected via the left toolbar.

- "Rear view camera"
  The Reversing Assist Camera view is shown.
- "Parking sensors only"
  The Park Distance Control view is displayed.
- "Parking"
  The view from different camera perspectives is displayed.
- "3D view"
  A three-dimensional view of the vehicle is displayed.
- "Tow hitch"
  The zoom for the trailer tow hitch is displayed.
- "Car wash"
  Your own lane is displayed for easier driving into the car wash.

Toolbar, right

The parking assistance functions are displayed in the right toolbar. The display may vary depending on the equipment.

- Status of the parking assistance systems.
- "Park Assist"
  Park Assist functions.
- "Reversing Assistant"
  Functions of the Reversing Assistant.
- "Settings"
  Settings in the Parking menu.

Status of the parking assistance systems

The status of active parking assistance systems is indicated by icons on the right toolbar.

Icon	Meaning
	No search for Park Assist services. Park Assist has failed.
	Search for Park Assist services is active.
	Park Assist: when the icon is green, Park Assist is active. The system takes control of the vehicle. Reversing Assistant: when the icon is green, Reversing Assistant is active. The system takes control of the steering.

Additional displays

General

Additional views, for example parking assistance lines, can be shown on the camera image on the parking assistance system display to facilitate parking and manoeuvring.

A number of additional displays can be active simultaneously.

Switching additional displays on/off

Via Parking Assistant button

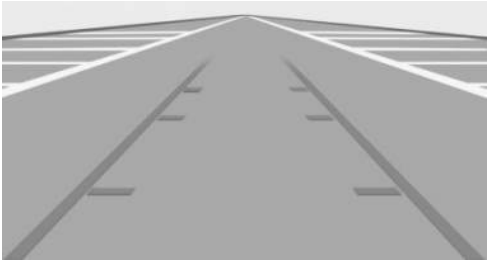
1. Activate camera image.
2. "Settings"
3. Select the desired settings.

Via iDrive

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Parking and manoeuvring"
6. Select the desired setting.

Parking assistance lines

Driving lane lines

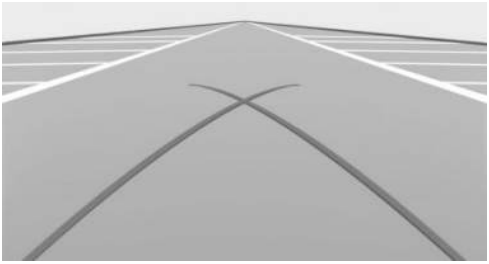


The driving lane lines help in estimating the space requirement when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

Depending on the gear engaged, the driving lane lines are displayed in front of or behind the vehicle.

The driving lane lines are continuously adapted to the steering wheel movements depending on the steering wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with lanes.

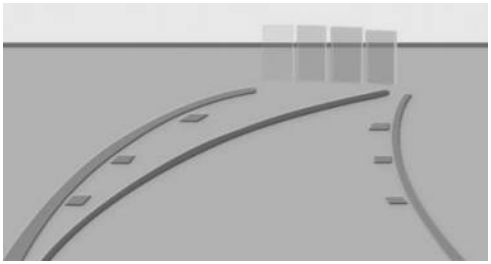
The lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Using parking assistance lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving lane line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



Obstacles are detected by the sensors.

Obstacles detected by Park Distance Control are marked on the camera image.

Coloured gradations of the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

Functional limitations

The system can only be used to a restricted extent in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With open luggage compartment.
- With the exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with grey hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown, for example an open door.

System limits

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Due to system limits, the system may either not react or react too late, incorrectly or for no reason. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

System limits of the sensors

For further information:

Sensors in the vehicle, see page 43.

Field of view

Due to the angle of view, the area under the vehicle cannot be seen by the cameras.

Detection of objects

The system cannot detect very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges.

The objects visible in the control display may be closer than they appear in the display. Do not estimate the distance to the objects on the control display.

Projecting loads or rear carriers can restrict the detection range of the camera.

Projecting loads, rear carriers, or trailers can restrict the detection range of the camera.

Malfunction

Failure of one camera is shown on the control display.

The detection range of the failed camera is displayed shaded on the control display.

Reversing Assist Camera

Principle

The Reversing Assist Camera assists in reverse parking and manoeuvring. It does this by showing an image of the area behind the vehicle on the control display.

Additional displays can be shown in the display, for example parking assistance lines and obstacle marking.

General

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Operating requirements

- The luggage compartment is fully closed.
- The camera area is clean and unobstructed.

Turning the Reversing Assist Camera on/off

Switching the camera view on automatically

The Reversing Assist Camera is automatically turned on if selector lever position R is engaged while drive-ready state is turned on.

Switching the camera view off automatically

When driving forwards, the Reversing Assist Camera turns off automatically when a certain distance or speed is exceeded, if necessary.

Switching the camera view on/off manually

Without Parking Assistant Plus

1.  Press the button.
2. "Rear view camera"

   To exit the Reversing Assist Camera view, select another camera view in the left toolbar.

With Parking Assistant Plus

1.  Press the button.
2. Select the icon in the selection window.

   To exit the camera view of the Reversing Assist Camera, select a different camera view in the selection window.

Deactivated Reversing Assist Camera

When the Reversing Assist Camera is deactivated, for example when the luggage compartment is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in grey.

Automatic camera perspective

Principle

The automatic camera perspective displays a steering angle-dependent view looking towards the vehicle's direction of travel.

This perspective adapts to the current driving situation.

General

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view switches to a fixed display of the area in front

of or behind the bumper or, if necessary, to the side Park Distance Control (PDC).

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is exited if necessary and the view of the Reversing Assist Camera is displayed. If required, select the automatic camera perspective with reverse gear engaged. The automatic camera perspective is retained for the current parking manoeuvre.

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Switching the automatic camera perspective on/off

Switching the camera view on/off automatically

When the display of the parking assistance systems is switched on, the automatic camera perspective is automatically selected.

The icon in the selection window is automatically selected.

To exit the steering-dependent camera view, select a different camera view in the selection window.

Switching the camera view on/off manually

1.  Press the button.
2. Select the icon in the selection window.

   To exit the steering-dependent camera view, select a different camera view in the selection window.

Lateral Parking Aid

Principle

The Lateral Parking Aid is automatically displayed when the automatic camera perspective is switched on. This feature shows obstacles located near the vehicle.

Display

Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

- No markings: no obstacles detected.
- Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.

System limits

The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. Consequently, the markings will no longer be shown on the display after the vehicle has been stationary for a while. The area next to the vehicle needs to be scanned again.

Side view

Principle

The side view displays the area at the side of the vehicle to assist with positioning the vehicle at the kerb or alongside any other obstacles.

Side view looks from the rear to the front. If there is a hazard, it automatically focuses on possible obstacles.

General

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Switching the side view on/off

Side view can be selected for the right or left side of vehicle in the selection window.

1. Press the button.
2. Select the icon for the desired vehicle side in the selection window.

   To exit the side view, select another camera view in the selection window.

3D view

Principle

In the 3D view, a circle around the top view of the vehicle is displayed in the selection window.

Specified perspectives can be selected on the circle.

General

The current perspective is identified by a camera icon.

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Turning the 3D view on/off

1. Press the button.
2. "3D view"

   To exit the 3D view, select another camera view in the left toolbar.

Zoom to trailer tow hitch

Principle

To assist with connecting up a trailer, it is possible to zoom in on the area around the trailer tow hitch.

General

When zooming in, remember that the view might no longer show certain obstacles.

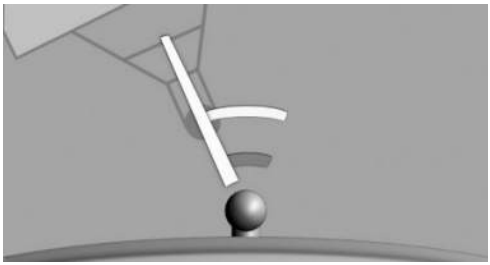
Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Turning zoom on trailer tow hitch on/off

1. Press the button.
2. "Tow hitch"

   To exit the zoom on the trailer tow hitch, select a different camera view in the left toolbar.

Display



Two static circular segments help to estimate the distance of the trailer to the trailer tow hitch.

A docking line dependent on the wheel angle assists with lining up the trailer tow hitch with the trailer.

Washing bay view

Principle

The washing bay view assists when entering a car wash.

General

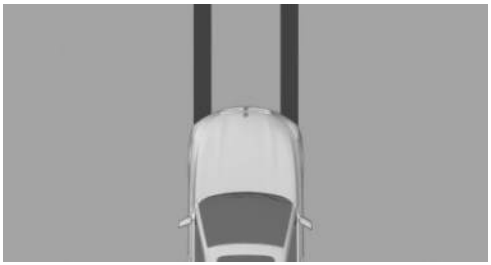
Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Turning the car wash view on/off

1.  Press the button.
2. "Car wash"

   To exit the car wash view, select another camera view in the left toolbar.

Display



Your own lane is displayed for easier driving into a car wash.

The display can be used to position the vehicle correctly in the guide rails of the car wash.

The vehicle must be able to roll freely while in the car wash.

For further information:

For rolling or pushing the vehicle, see page 136.

Panorama View

Principle

The panorama view gives you an earlier view of crossing traffic at blind driveway exits and road junctions.

General

Road users hidden by obstacles at the side may not be seen from the driver's seat until very late. The front camera and the Reversing Assist Camera capture the area around the side of the vehicle to improve visibility.

The function can be switched on automatically by storing activation points.

The camera image is subject to varying levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for estimating distances.

Depending on the equipment, the function can be used when driving forwards or reversing.

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Sensors

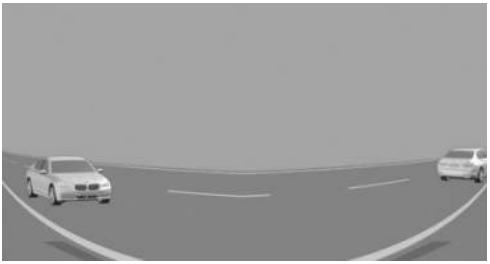
The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- Reversing Assist Camera.
- Front camera.

Switching the panorama view on/off

 Press the button.

Display



Yellow lines on the screen mask identify the bumpers of your own vehicle.

Depending on the engaged selector lever position, the camera view of the Reversing Assist Camera or front camera will be displayed.

Automatic activation of the panorama view

Principle

Positions at which the panoramic view should switch on automatically can be saved as activation points.

General

Up to ten activation points can be saved.

The activation points can be used when driving forwards and, depending on the national-market version, when reversing.

Follow the information in the Panorama view chapter.

Operating requirements

- A GPS signal must be received.
- Depending on the national-market version: a BMW ID or a driver profile must be activated.
- The Reversing Assist Camera and front camera must be installed.
- The direction of travel, selector lever position and vehicle angle must correspond to a saved activation point.

Saving activation points

1. Drive the vehicle to the position where the system should switch on and stop.
2.  Press the button.
3. "Activation point"

   The current position is shown.
4. "Save activation point"

Activation points are stored with one of the following where possible:

- Location.
- Location and street.
- GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

Use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1.  Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. "GPS-based"

Displaying activation points

1.  Press the button.
2. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is shown.

Editing activation points

1.  Press the button.
2. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is shown.
3. Select an activation point if necessary.
4. Select the desired setting.

Door opening angle

Principle

Depending on the equipment, the door opening angle indicator is displayed automatically when stationary.

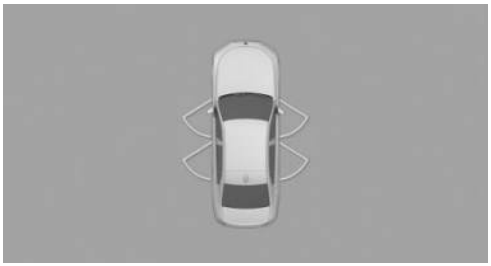
The display helps to estimate how far the doors can be opened in a parking situation.

If obstacle marking is activated, the parking view indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

General

Follow the information in the chapter “Parking assistance systems”.

Display



The maximum door opening angles are displayed when the selector lever is in position P.

System limits

The system does not issue warnings about approaching road users.

For technical reasons, the display of the vehicle surroundings is distorted.

Even if the door opening angle indicator on the control display does not superimpose any other objects, it is necessary to park carefully next to other objects.

The perspective means that protruding objects located higher up may be closer than they appear on the control display.

Remote 3D View

Principle

The My BMW App and the camera views in the parking view, for example automatic camera perspective, enable the display of the vehicle surroundings on a mobile end device.

The function shows a view of the current situation.

General

For reasons related to data protection, the function can only be run three times in two hours.

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following cameras:

- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Reversing Assist Camera.

Operating requirements

- Data transfer must be activated.

  Data protection, see page 72.
- The My BMW App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ConnectedDrive countries: a BMW ID with an existing ConnectedDrive account must be activated.

  BMW ID/driver profiles, see page 73.

Activating/deactivating Remote 3D View

The function can be activated or deactivated individually or together with other functions.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

   After the activation, Remote 3D View can be accessed in the My BMW App.

System limits

The system may have restricted functionality or may not be available at all in situations such as the following:

- With a door or the luggage compartment open. Areas that the system is not able to record are shown dark on the display.
- If the exterior mirrors have been folded in manually.
- When other camera functions are being run in the vehicle.
- The vehicle moves faster than at walking speed.
- In case of missing or weak Internet connection.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle are signalled by acoustic and visual warnings.

Obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors can also be reported.

General

The range of the system is approximately 2 m, 6 ft, depending on the obstacle and environmental factors.

An acoustic warning is given when the vehicle is approx. 70 cm, 27 in away from an object and a collision is imminent.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is given sooner, at a distance of approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft.

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Approaching at high speed when Park Distance Control is activated may result in late warnings due to the physical conditions. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Avoid approaching an object at speed. Avoid driving off at speed while Park Distance Control is not yet activated.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Side ultrasonic sensors.

Turning Park Distance Control on/off

Switching on the system automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- With drive-ready state switched on, when selector lever position R is engaged.
- When approaching detected obstacles, if the speed is less than approximately 4 km/h, approx. 2.5 mph. The distance from the obstacle at which the system activates depends on the individual situation.

The automatic activation in the event of detected obstacles can be activated or deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Parking and manoeuvring"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

Turning off the system automatically

When driving forwards, the system turns off automatically when a certain distance or speed is exceeded, if necessary.

Switching the system on/off manually

Press the button.

- On: the LED is illuminated.
- Off: the LED goes out.

If the system is manually switched on when reverse gear is engaged, the image of the Reversing Assist Camera is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

General

An intermittent tone indicates that the vehicle is approaching an object. For example, if an object is detected to the rear left of the vehicle, the sound is emitted from the rear left loudspeaker.

The shorter the distance to an object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

A continuous tone sounds if the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 20 cm, 8 in.

An alternating continuous tone sounds from the front and rear loudspeakers if there are objects in front and behind the vehicle at the same time and at a distance of less than approximately 20 cm, 8 in.

The intermittent tones and the continuous tone are turned off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on the national-market version, the interval tones are switched off after a short time with the vehicle at a standstill.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

Adjusting the volume

The volume of the acoustic warning can be adjusted.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Parking and manoeuvring"
6. "PDC signal volume"
7. Set the desired value.

Visual warning

General

When you are approaching an object, its proximity is displayed on the control display as soon as the system is activated.

Objects that are farther away are already displayed before a signal sounds.

Depending on the view, driving lane lines, turning circle lines and obstacle markings are shown for a better estimation of the space required.

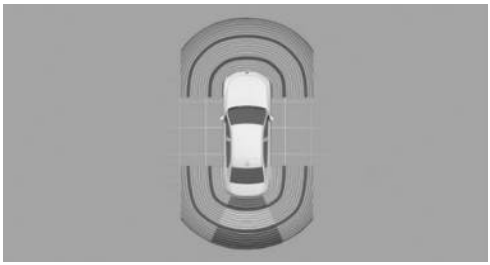
Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is represented by shaded ring-shaped areas. Markings in green, yellow and red indicate when obstacles are detected in the detection range.

If equipped with the Crossing-traffic Warning: the display also warns of vehicles approaching from the sides at the front and rear.

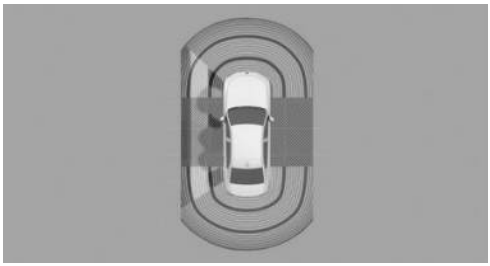
Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

Display

Depending on the equipment, warnings may be displayed in front of, next to and behind the vehicle.



Example for the display of warnings behind the vehicle.



Example for the display of warnings next to the vehicle.

- Grey shaded area: detection range of the sensors. No obstacles were detected in the detection range.
- Coloured markings in the shaded area: obstacles were detected in the detection range.
- Hatched area interrupted: the area next to the vehicle has not yet been recorded.

System limits

General

The function to protect the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. The grey hatched areas on the sides are hidden after a certain period of time when the vehicle is at a standstill. The area on the side of the vehicle must be newly captured.

Also observe the limits of the system in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Trailer operation

With a trailer or when the trailer socket is occupied, the rear functions of Park Distance Control are switched off.

Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is shown dark on the control display.

Obstacles next to the vehicle are not displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the rear functions of Park Distance Control remain switched on when the trailer operation is activated.

An icon is displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Towing a trailer, see page 314.

False alarms

If the system is approaching its limits, false alarms may occur.

To reduce false alarms, for example in conveyor car washes, switch off automatic activation of Park Distance Control when obstacles are detected if necessary.

Malfunction

An icon is displayed on the control display.

Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is not displayed on the control display.

A Check Control message is shown.

Park Distance Control failure. Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an imminent risk of collision.

General

Due to the system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available at speeds below walking speed when reversing or rolling back.

Pressing the accelerator pedal suppresses the brake intervention. Emergency braking is not performed.

After emergency braking to a stop, it is possible to continue a slow approach to the obstacle. To approach, lightly depress the accelerator pedal and release it again.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed for longer, the vehicle pulls away. Manual braking is possible at any time.

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety informationSafety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the assistance system cannot react correctly if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not use the assistance system in trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a rear bike carrier.

Sensors

The system is controlled using the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the rear bumpers.
- Side ultrasonic sensors.

Temporarily deactivating Active Park Distance Control

After emergency braking, the function can be temporarily deactivated on the control display. An appropriate message is displayed.

1. "Configure"
2. "Deactivate temporarily"

If the journey is continued in these environmental conditions, no further emergency braking is performed.

The function is automatically reactivated when the Park Distance Control is switched on again.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas of the vehicle are protected by the system.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Parking and manoeuvring"
6. "Active PDC emergency braking"
7. Select the desired setting.

Display

As soon as the system intervenes, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General

Observe the limits of the system in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Functional limitations

The system cannot be used in situations such as the following:

- When driving with a trailer.

If applicable, switch off the system temporarily, if needed.

Park Assist

Principle

Park Assist provides support when parallel and bay parking.

The system also makes it easier to leave parallel parking spaces.

The ultrasonic sensors measure the surroundings on both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly straight forward. Suitable parking spaces are calculated based on detected objects, for example, parked vehicles. The status of the system is displayed.

The system calculates the optimum parking line for driving in or out of parking spaces and takes control of the vehicle during the parking manoeuvre.

The operating principle and operation of the system is divided into the following steps:

- Parking space search.
- Switching on.
- Parking.
- Leaving parking space.

The parking manoeuvre during parking is performed automatically.

When leaving parallel parking spaces, the vehicle manoeuvres automatically until the vehicle reaches a position in which the driver can drive out of the parking space without further steering wheel movements.

General

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

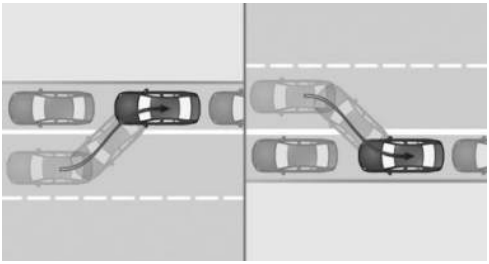
When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the assistance system cannot react correctly if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not use the assistance system in trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a rear bike carrier.

WARNING

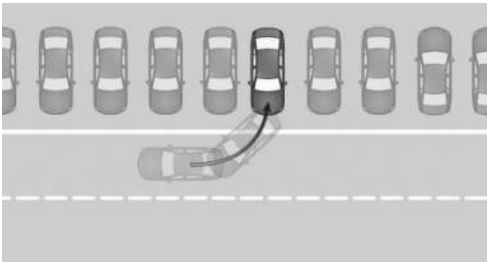
The system can steer the vehicle over or onto kerbs. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Parking methods

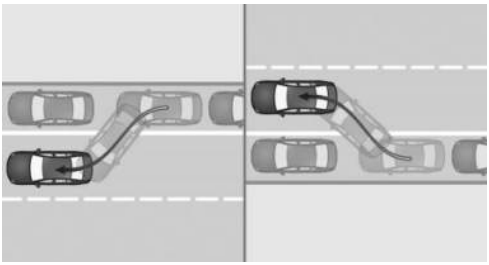
Park Assist supports the following functions:



Parallel parking: reverse parking parallel to the road.



Bay parking: reverse parking perpendicular to the road.



Leaving parallel parking spaces.

Sensors

The Park Assist is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Side ultrasonic sensors.

Operating requirements

Measurement of parking spaces

- Driving forwards in a straight line up to a maximum speed of approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph.
- Maximum distance from the row of parked vehicles: 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Suitable parking space

Parallel parking:

- Minimum length of a detected object, for example, a parking vehicle: approx. 1 m, approx. 3 ft.
- Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approximately 0.8 m, 2.6 ft.
- Minimum depth: approximately 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Bay parking:

- Minimum length of a detected object, for example, a parking vehicle: approx. 1 m, approx. 3 ft.
- Minimum width of gap: own vehicle width plus approximately 0.7 m, 2.3 ft.
- Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

  The depth of bay parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limits, the system is only able to gauge the depth of bay parking spaces approximately.

Parking manoeuvre

- Doors and luggage compartment are closed.
- Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Leaving parking space

- The vehicle was parked using the Park Assist and an object is detected in the area around the vehicle.
- The vehicle was parked manually in reverse and objects in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle are detected. The distance to a detected kerb is at least 15 cm, approx. 6 in.
- The parking space is at least 0.8 m, 2.6 ft longer than the vehicle.

Displays

The current status of the parking space search is displayed on the right toolbar.

When parallel or bay parking spaces are clearly detected, the system automatically selects the appropriate parking method. If there are parking spaces that are large enough for both parallel and bay parking, both parking spaces are shown on the control display. The parking direction can be selected by selecting the parking space.

Switching the acoustic signal on/off

The acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces can be turned on and off.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Parking and manoeuvring"
6. "Sound when available"

Parking with Park Assist

1. For the parking space search, drive past parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 35 km/h, approx. 22 mph and at a maximum distance of 1.5 m, approx. 5 ft.

   Parking space search is activated.

2. Press the  key or engage reverse gear.

   The display of the parking assistance systems is shown.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are shown on the control display.

3. Select the suggested parking method.

   Green: the system takes control of the parking manoeuvre.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

   The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   Depending on the national-market version, an intermittent tone or a continuous tone of the Park Distance Control will sound.

   When parking manoeuvre is complete, selector lever position P is engaged.

   Completion of parking manoeuvre is indicated on the control display.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself if necessary.

Leaving parking space with Park Assist

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.  With the vehicle at a standstill, press the button or engage reverse gear.

   The display of the parking assistance systems is shown.

3. Select the desired parking direction for leaving the parking space on the control display.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

   Green: the system takes control of the parking manoeuvre.

   The speed can be reduced with the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   A message is displayed at the end of the manoeuvre.

5. Make sure that it is safe to leave the parking space with the given traffic situation, and drive off as usual.

   The Park Assist is turned off automatically.

Cancelling Park Assist manually

Park Assist can be cancelled manually at any time, for example:

-  Press the button.
- "Park Assist": select the icon on the control display.

Cancelling Park Assist automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- On snow-covered or slippery road surfaces, if necessary.
- If it encounters objects that are difficult to negotiate, for example kerbs.
- If objects appear suddenly.
- With insufficient distances, which are indicated by the Park Distance Control.
- When a maximum number of parking moves or the parking time is exceeded.
- If you switch to other functions on the control display.
- The turn indicator is turned on opposite to the desired parking side.
- With open luggage compartment.
- When the doors are open.
- If the parking brake is applied.
- When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- The brake pedal remains depressed for longer while the vehicle is stationary.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened.

A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

Continuing the parking manoeuvre

If parking or leaving a parking space has been interrupted, the operation can be continued, if needed.

To do this, switch Park Assist on again and follow the instructions on the control display.

System limits

General

Observe the limits of the system in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

No parking assistance

Park Assist does not provide assistance in the following situations:

- On tight bends.
- In angled parking spaces.
- In trailer operation.
- With parking spaces which are marked by lines on the floor only. The system orients itself on objects.
- For special parking spaces, for example paid parking spaces with automatic locking mechanisms, or mechanical parking systems.

Under certain environmental conditions, leaving a parking space with Park Assist may be temporarily unavailable. The system limits of Park Distance Control and Park Assist continue to apply.

Functional limitations

The system may have restricted functionality in situations such as the following:

- On uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- On slippery surfaces.
- On steep uphill or downhill gradients.
- If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- If an already measured parking space changes.
- If there are ditches or sudden drops, for example at a quayside.
- In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

Park Assist may not be functional. Have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Reversing Assistant

Principle

The Reversing Assistant assists when driving in reverse, for example when driving out of tight or confusing parking or street situations.

General

The vehicle saves the driving movements for the last distance covered. This stored distance can be driven back with automated steering.

The system takes control of the steering. The speed must be controlled by the driver using the accelerator pedal and the brake.

A maximum of 50 m, approx. 164 ft is stored.

Follow the information in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limits, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic situations. There is a risk of acci-

dent, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, the assistance system cannot react correctly if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not use the assistance system in trailer operation or when using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a rear bike carrier.

WARNING

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto kerbs. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

- To save the distance covered, drive forwards without interruption.
- To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 35 km/h, 22 mph.
- No trailer operation.
- Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Reversing with automated steering

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.  With the vehicle at a standstill, press the button or engage reverse gear.

   The display of the parking assistance systems is shown.
3. "Reversing Assistant"

   Follow the instructions on the control display as applicable.
4. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive in reverse with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

   Green: the system takes control of the steering.

   When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle surroundings.

   In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Pay attention to the information on Park Distance Control.
5. Shortly before the end of the stored distance covered, an acoustic signal will sound and a message is displayed.

   Stop when you reach normal road traffic at the latest and take over control of the vehicle, for example by engaging a forward gear.

Cancelling the Reversing Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Reversing Assistant can be cancelled manually:

- Via the touchscreen: "Reversing Assistant"
-  Press the button.

Cancelling the Reversing Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- When shifting from reverse gear to another selector lever position.
- During activation of or intervention by driver assistance systems.

- After an extended period of time when the vehicle is stationary.
- When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for example with a maximum steering wheel angle.
- When the display on the control display is faded due to messages.
- In case of a slippery surface.
- When the vehicle is rolling, for example on a slope.
- In case of changed environmental factors.
- When the trailer socket is occupied or trailer operation is activated.
- At speeds over approximately 9 km/h, approx. 6 mph.

System limits

- The maximum speed when driving in reverse is limited to approx. 9 km/h, approx. 6 mph.

  A warning occurs at a speed of approx. 7 km/h, approx. 4 mph.

  If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.
- After driving a stored distance covered with major steering-wheel angles, the function of the system will be restricted for the return trip.

Various factors can cause the vehicle to deviate sideways when reversing along the saved distance covered. These factors include, for example:

- If the steering wheel is moved with the vehicle stationary while the distance covered is being saved.
- The speed is not adapted to the distance covered in question.
- Certain road characteristics, for example gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.
- Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the distance covered, for example, different tyres or changed environmental factors like the weather.

Also observe the limits of the system in the chapter "Parking assistance systems".

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Adaptive M suspension

Principle

The adaptive M suspension is an intelligent, controllable sport suspension.

The suspension reduces body movements with a sporty driving style or on an uneven road.

General

The intelligent control of the suspension increases the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road condition and driving style.

Setting

The system offers various shock absorber settings, from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The shock absorbers are adjusted depending on the selected drive mode as well as the road condition and driving style.

For further information:

Driving Experience Control, see page 140.

BMW IconicSounds

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the drive sound of the vehicle can be adjusted with BMW IconicSounds.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "IconicSounds"
6. Select the desired setting.

Air conditioning

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Air conditioning control

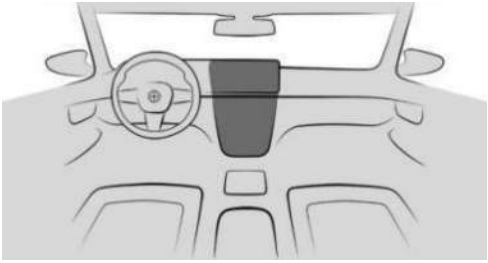
Overview

Functions in the air conditioning menu

Icon	Function
	Switching the air conditioning system on/off.
	Automatic programme.
	Temperature.
	Air conditioning function.
	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation function.
	Automatic air recirculation control.

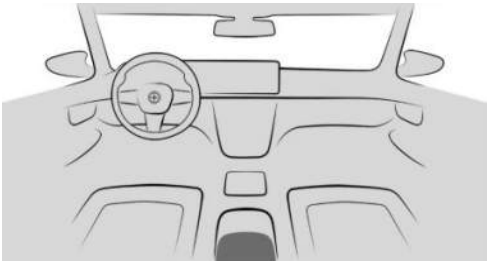
Icon	Function
	Fresh air.
	Amount of air.
	Air distribution.
	SYNC programme.
	Seat heating.
	Steering wheel heating.

Buttons, integrated automatic heating/air conditioning system



Icon	Function
	Defrost function.
	Rear window heating.

Buttons, automatic rear air conditioning system



Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic programme.
▼ ▲	Temperature.
	Air distribution.
OFF	To switch off.

Go to air conditioning functions

The Climate menu can be accessed via iDrive:

Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.

Or:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Climate control"

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

The air conditioning system can be switched on or off using iDrive.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. Tap the button for switching on and off.

The complete air conditioning system is switched on or off with the last settings.

When the air conditioning system is turned on, individual air conditioning functions can be turned off.

Settings

Individual settings for the air conditioning functions can be made via iDrive, for example:

- Intensity of the seat heating.
- Pre-cooling.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings" or "General settings"
3. Select the desired setting.

Turning automatic rear air conditioning system on/off

Operating requirements

- Automatic air conditioning is turned on.
- Defrost function is deactivated.

Via iDrive

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"

3. "Second row of seats"
4. "Rear climate control"
5. Select the desired setting.

The automatic rear air conditioning system can be activated with the default settings for temperature and AUTO programme:

"Activate with default settings"

Switching on using the button

Press one of the following buttons:

- Temperature.
- Automatic programme.
- Air distribution, manual.

Switching off using the button

OFF Press the button.

Locking the automatic rear air conditioning system

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. "Lock rear climate control"

Automatic programme

Principle

The automatic programme ensures a comfortable climate, which can be modified with the set temperature and individual settings.

The automatic programme cools, ventilates, or heats the vehicle interior automatically.

General

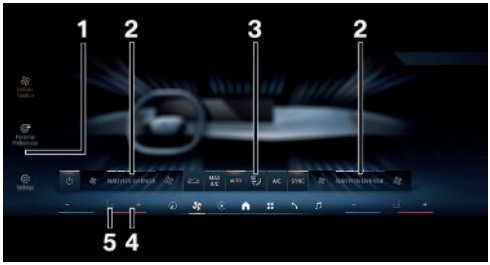
Depending on vehicle equipment, the automatic programme provides the best possible settings for air conditioning functions depending on the outside temperature, interior temperature, sunlight, seat occupancy, and the desired temperature setting:

- Amount of air.
- Air distribution.
- Temperature.
- Seat heating.

The automatic programme takes the seat occupancy into account to ensure energy-efficient control adapting to the vehicle passengers.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the automatic programme in such a way that condensation is avoided as far as possible.

Overview



1 Settings
2 Air intensity
3 Air conditioning functions bar
4 Temperature
5 Seat heating

Switching the automatic programme on/off

The automatic programme can be switched on or off using iDrive.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. AUTO Tap the button for the automatic programme.

Switching the automatic rear air conditioning system programme on/off

Using the button

AUTO Press the button.

The button LED lights up when the automatic programme is switched on.

Setting the intensity

When the automatic programme is activated, the intensity of individual climate comfort functions, for example, the seat heating, can be individually adjusted.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. Select the desired setting.

Each level has a specific control range of the intensity.

Based on the stored data models, the intensities are dynamically adjusted during the journey. It is not necessary to manually change the desired intensity to lower or higher levels while driving.

The individually selected settings of the air conditioning functions are stored and automatically set up again, for example, after the vehicle is started again.

Display

The indicator in the menu bar provides information about the temperature differential between the set desired temperature and current interior temperature:

- The red or blue bar next to the temperature display indicates the progress of heating up or cooling.
- The desired interior temperature is reached as soon as the bar is no longer displayed.

Active air conditioning functions, for example seat heating, are displayed as an icon in the menu bar.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning cools or heats to the set temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

General

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to adjust to the set temperature.

Adjusting the temperature

The desired temperature can be set individually in the menu bar for the driver and front passenger.

- ▷ + Increase the temperature.
- ▷ — Reduce the temperature.

Setting the automatic rear air conditioning system temperature

Via iDrive

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Second row of seats"
4. Set the desired temperature.

Using the button

Press the left or right side of the button to set the desired temperature.

Upper body temperature

General

The air temperature in the upper body area can be adjusted.

The set interior temperature for driver and front passenger is not changed by this.

Adjusting the upper body temperature

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Temperature adjustment upper body"
4. Increase or decrease the temperature.

Amount of air

Principle

The blower-generated air flow can be adjusted individually as needed.

The amount of air may be reduced in order to save the vehicle battery power.

Adjusting the amount of air

The amount of air can be set using iDrive.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. Select the desired setting.

Automatic programme:

- ▷ Select the large icon for the amount of air to increase the amount of air.
- ▷ Select the small icon for the amount of air to reduce the amount of air.

Manual operation:

- ▷ Tap the up arrow: increase the amount of air.
- ▷ Tap the down arrow: decrease the amount of air.

Air distribution

Principle

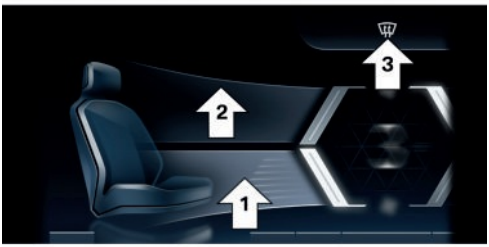
In manual mode, the air distribution can be adjusted as required.

Adjusting the air distribution

The air distribution can be set using iDrive.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2.  Tap the air distribution icon in the air conditioning functions bar.
3. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ Direct the air flow into the footwell, arrow 1.
   - ▷ Direct the air flow to the upper body area, arrow 2.
   - ▷ Direct the air flow to the windscreen, arrow 3.

   The selected air distribution is displayed.



Adjusting the air distribution, automatic rear air conditioning system

 Press the button repeatedly. Select the desired setting.

The selected air distribution setting is shown on the automatic rear air conditioning system display.

Air conditioning function

Principle

With the cooling function, the air in the interior is cooled, dried and then heated again depending on the temperature setting.

Operating requirement

Standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching the cooling function on/off

The cooling function can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. 

Tap the button for the cooling function.

The air conditioning function is switched on automatically when the air recirculation function is operating in order to dry the air and prevent condensation.

Depending on the weather conditions, the windscreen and the side windows may mist over for a short time after switching on drive-ready state.

Cooling produces condensation, which then exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Principle

The maximum cooling enables quick and intense cooling of the interior.

The lowest temperature and maximum amount of air are set automatically.

This function is automatically activated in the rear when the SYNC programme is turned on.

Operating requirement

The following functional requirements apply to maximum cooling:

- Outside temperature above approx. 0 °C, 32 °F.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

Turning maximum cooling on/off

Maximum cooling can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. 

Tap the button for maximum cooling.

The air flows from the air vents for the upper body area. Open the vents.

Air recirculation function

Principle

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply of outside air into the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The interior air is then recirculated.

In the automatic recirculated-air control, outside air is drawn in or the interior air is circulated, depending on the outside air quality.

When the air recirculation function is turned off, outside air is directed into the interior.

General

If there is condensation, switch off the air recirculation function.

The interior filter cleans the incoming outside air or the circulated interior air with the air recirculation function.

Turning the air recirculation function on/off

The air recirculation function can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. The current operating mode is displayed in the air conditioning functions toolbar. Tap the button until the desired operating mode is set.
   -  Air recirculation function.
   -  Fresh air.
   - 

Automatic air recirculation control.

Depending on the equipment, the air recirculation function will switch off automatically after some time depending on the environmental factors to prevent condensation.

SYNC programme

Principle

If the SYNC programme is activated, settings on the driver's side are adopted for the front passenger's side and the rear.

If the SYNC programme is deactivated, the following settings are applied automatically with the automatic programme for improved comfort, depending on seat occupancy:

- If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the settings for the driver's side are adopted for the front passenger's side.
- The default settings for the rear are applied to unoccupied seats in the rear.

If a seat is occupied again, the last settings made are activated once more.

General

The following settings can be adopted:

- Temperature.
- Air distribution.
- Automatic programme.

Turning the SYNC programme on/off

The SYNC programme can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. 

Tap the button for the SYNC programme.

If the settings on the passenger side or in the rear are changed, the programme is automatically switched off.

Defrost function

Principle

With the defrost function, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windscreen and the front side windows.

The amount of air and air temperature are automatically optimised for the removal of ice and condensation.

The air distribution is directed towards the windscreen and the front side windows.

If there is condensation, turn on the automatic programme to utilise the advantages of the condensation sensor.

When the defrost function is switched on, the automatic rear air conditioning is deactivated to provide maximum power.

Turning the defrost function on/off

Press the defrost button on the instrument panel.

The LED in the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

Check that air can flow to the windscreen and front side windows.

Rear window heating

Principle

With the rear window heating, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the rear window.

Operating requirement

Standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.

Turning the rear window heating on/off

Press the rear window heating button on the instrument panel.

The button LED is illuminated when the rear window heating is switched on.

The rear window heating switches off automatically after a while.

Seat heating

Principle

The system heats the seats if necessary.

General

If a drive is resumed within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, the functions are automatically switched on at the last temperature setting.

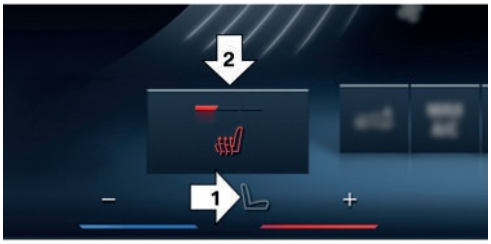
Adjusting the seat heating

Automatic programme

When the automatic programme is activated, the intensity of seat heating can be adjusted. The heating power is automatically adjusted according to the set intensity during the course of the journey.

Adjusting the seat heating manually

The heat output level can be adjusted manually:



1. Tap the icon for seat climate control in the menu bar, arrow 1.
2.  Press the button for the seat heating repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

If a drive mode for a consumption-optimised driving style is selected, the heater output is reduced.

Steering wheel heating

Principle

The system heats the steering wheel if necessary.

Adjusting the steering wheel heating

Automatic programme

When the automatic programme is activated, the intensity of the steering wheel heating can be adjusted. The heating power is automatically adjusted according to the set intensity during the course of the journey.

Adjusting the steering wheel heating manually

The heat output level can be adjusted manually:

1. Tap the icon for seat climate control in the menu bar, arrow 1.
2.  Press the button for the steering wheel heating repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

If a drive mode for a consumption-optimised driving style is selected, the heater output is reduced.

Ventilation

Principle

The ventilation system provides individual adjustment options for direct or indirect ventilation to optimise the movement of air inside the vehicle.

General

Open the air vents and position them in a way that ensures effective climate control.

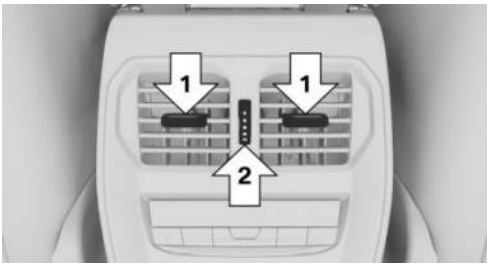
The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the set temperature.

Ventilation at front

Setting the air flow direction and amount of air at the air vent.

- Changing the air flow direction: press the button in the desired air flow direction.
- Changing the amount of air:
  - Turn the button clockwise to increase the amount of air.
  - Turn the button anti-clockwise to decrease the amount of air.

Ventilation in rear passenger compartment



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the air vents, arrow 2.

Adjusting the ventilation

Depending on the set ventilation, align the air flow directly or indirectly toward the passengers.

Air quality

General

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- Emissions-tested interior.
- Interior filter.
- Climate control system for regulating temperature, amount of air and air recirculation function.
- Pre-cooling.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming outside air or the circulated interior air with the air recirculation function.

Depending on the equipment:

- Dust and pollen are filtered out from the inflowing outside air.
- Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- Microbial particles, viruses, and allergens are filtered.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the interior filter replaced when the vehicle is serviced.

Pre-cooling/pre-heating

Principle

The system consists of the pre-cooling and pre-heating functions. It allows the temperature of the interior to be adjusted before the journey starts. The interior is ventilated or heated depending on the set temperature and ambient temperature. When doing so, the system uses any available residual heat from the engine or the vehicle's fuel for generating heat.

General

The system can be switched on and off directly or for a preselected departure time.

The switch-on time is calculated based on the outside temperature. The system will switch on in good time before the preselected departure time.

The system switches off automatically after a while. It continues to run for a short time after it has been switched off.

If outside temperatures are below 0 °C, 32 °F, water vapour condenses and exits underneath the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust gases can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on the pre-heating in enclosed spaces, for example closed garages.

⚠ WARNING

When the pre-heating is operating, high temperatures can be generated under the body, for example because of the exhaust system. If flammable materials come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials may ignite. There is a danger of fire, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Make sure that no flammable materials, for example leaves, grass, gas, petrol, oil or other flammable objects, can come into contact with vehicle parts when the pre-heating is operating. Switch off the pre-heating before refuelling.

Operating requirements

- The vehicle is in rest state or standby state.
- The vehicle battery must be sufficiently charged.

  When activated, the pre-cooling/pre-heating function uses power from the vehicle battery. As a result, the maximum operating time is restricted to protect the vehicle battery. After the engine is started or after driving a short distance, the system will be available again.
- For pre-heating: the fuel tank capacity is sufficient.

If the fuel tank capacity is low and the vehicle is parked on a slant, the pre-heating function may be restricted.

- Time and date are set correctly.
- The air vents of the ventilation are open.

Turning the pre-cooling/pre-heating on/off

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-heating/cooling"
4. Select the desired setting.

Departure time

General

To ensure a pleasant interior temperature in the vehicle at the start of the journey, it is possible to set different departure times.

- One-off departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is activated once.
- Departure time with day of the week: the time and day of the week can be set.

  The system is switched on before the set departure time on the required days of the week.

Preselection of departure time is done in two stages:

- Set the departure times.
- Activate the departure time.

At least 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the scheduled departure time, so the climate control has enough time to work.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-heating/cooling"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the required departure time.
6. Set the desired departure time.
7. Select the day of the week if necessary.

Via BMW display key:

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the icon or the icon.
4. Select the required departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select the day of the week if necessary.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-heating/cooling"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the required departure time.

Via BMW display key:

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the icon or the icon.
4. Activate the desired departure time:

   Tap the icon.

Display in the instrument panel

Icon	Description
	Icon illuminates: the pre-heating is switched on.
	Icon is illuminated: a departure time is activated. Icon flashes: the pre-cooling is turned on.

Activating with the My BMW App

Depending on the equipment, the My BMW app with remote function can be used to switch on the pre-cooling/pre-heating via a preselected departure time or directly.

Pre-conditioning via Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or warms the interior to a comfortable temperature before the start of a journey. The system does this by automatically cooling, ventilating or heating depending on the internal, external and set desired temperature. Any snow and ice can be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically for this purpose and lets it run for a limited time.

Safety information

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to pollute the area around the vehicle or enter it. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces or spaces with inadequate ventilation, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on the pre-conditioning in enclosed or poorly ventilated spaces, for example closed garages.

WARNING

When the pre-conditioning is operating, high temperatures can be generated under the body, for example because of the exhaust system. If flammable materials come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials may ignite. There is a danger of fire, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Make sure that no flammable materials, for example leaves, grass, gas, petrol, oil or other flammable objects, can come into contact with vehicle parts when the pre-conditioning is operating.

Operating requirements

- The vehicle is in rest state or standby state.
- Battery must be sufficiently charged.
- Fuel tank capacity is sufficient.
- Bonnet is closed.
- Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.
- Ventilation air vents are open.

Enabling automatic engine start

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system. This enables the engine to switch on automatically in order to control the interior climate.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Remote Engine Start"

5. "Start engine for climate control"
6. Confirm the disclaimer.

Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

General

For safety reasons, the system switches off automatically after 15 minutes at the latest.

The system can be switched on a maximum of twice in succession.

The system will be available again once the drive-ready state has been activated and deactivated again.

Switching on via iDrive

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Start now"

Switching on/off using the vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.

 Press the vehicle key button three times within 1 second.

After the vehicle key is pressed, it will take around 3 seconds for the engine to switch on.

To switch the system off, press the button again three times.

Switching off using the Start/Stop button

The system can be switched off directly by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal.

Climate control for departure time

General

To ensure a pleasant interior temperature in the vehicle at the start of the journey, it is possible to set scheduled departure times in the system.

- One-off departure time: the scheduled departure time can be set.

  The system is switched on as a one-off.
- Departure time with day of the week: the scheduled departure time and day of the week can be set.

Preselection of departure time is done in two stages:

- Set the departure times.
- Activate the departure time.

The system is automatically activated a few minutes before the set departure time. The system remains switched on until just after the set departure time.

For safety reasons, climate control for departure time is only possible once.

The system will be available again once the drive-ready state has been activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information regarding the intended use of the vehicle.

For further information:

Your own safety, see page 9.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"

5. Set the departure time.
6. Select the day of the week if necessary.

Via BMW display key:

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the icon.
4. Select the required departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select the day of the week if necessary.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu in the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the required departure time.

Via BMW display key:

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the icon.
4. Activate the desired departure time:

   Tap the icon.

Display

In the instrument cluster:

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Icon	Description
	Icon on instrument panel. Icon is illuminated: a departure time is activated. Icon flashes: the pre-conditioning is turned on.

Vehicle acknowledgement signals

The system switch-on is acknowledged by two flashes.

The side lights remain switched on while the system is switched on.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Sun visor

Glare protection

Fold the sun visor downwards or upwards.

Protection from glare at the side

Folding the sun visor out

1. Fold down the sun visor.
2. Detach the sun visor from its holder and pivot it sideways to the side window.

Folding the sun visor in

To close the sun visor, proceed in reverse order.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located behind a cover in the sun visor.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

General

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12V.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Devices and cables, for example portable navigation devices, that are located in the deployment range of the airbags may impede airbag deployment or be thrown around the vehicle interior when the airbag is deployed. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the deployment range of the airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12V electrical system. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

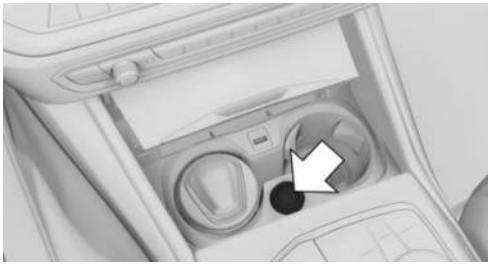
⚠ WARNING

If metal objects fall into or are inserted into electronic interfaces, for example, sockets or USB ports, they can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Ensure that no metal objects fall into or are inserted into electronic interfaces. After using the socket, re-fit the cigarette lighter or socket cover.

Front centre console

1. Press the cover.

2. The socket is located between the cup holders. Pull off the cover.



USB port

General

Please comply with the notes on connecting mobile devices to the USB port in the chapter on USB connections.

For further information:

For information on USB connection, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

If metal objects fall into or are inserted into electronic interfaces, for example, sockets or USB ports, they can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Ensure that no metal objects fall into or are inserted into electronic interfaces. After using the socket, re-fit the cigarette lighter or socket cover.

In the centre armrest

There is a USB port in the centre armrest.

Properties:

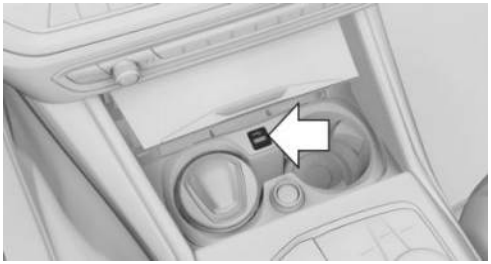
- USB port type C.
- For charging mobile devices.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.

In the front centre console

⚠ NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, for example large USB connectors, can block or damage the cover on opening and closing. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the cover is kept clear.

If necessary, press on the cover.



There is a USB port in the centre console.

Properties:

- USB port type A.
- For charging mobile devices and transferring data.
- Charge current: maximum 1.5 A.

In the rear centre console

Depending on vehicle equipment, there are two USB ports in the centre console in the rear.

Properties:

- USB port type C.
- For charging mobile devices.
- Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray allows wireless charging of smartphones certified according to the Qi standard.

General

When inserting the smartphone to be charged, make sure that there are no objects in the wireless charging tray together with the smartphone to be charged.

The charging process is indicated by the charge indicator on the control display.

Safety information

WARNING

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects that are in the tray together with the device can become very hot. If storage media or electronic cards, for example, smart cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for transmitting signals, are located in the tray together with the device, their function may be impaired. There is a danger of injury and material damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects in the tray together with the device.

Overview

Dock in the centre console:

1 LED

2 Dock surface

Operating requirements

- The smartphone to be charged must have been certified according to the Qi standard.
- Standby state is switched on.
- The maximum size for a smartphone is approximately 154.5 x 80 x 18 mm, 6.06 x 3.1 x 0.7 in.
- Protective sleeves and covers must be suitable for wireless charging.
- The smartphone to be charged is located in the middle of the tray. The display of the smartphone is facing upwards.

Inserting the smartphone

1. Open the cover of the dock.
2. Place the smartphone in the centre of the dock with the display facing upwards.
3. Close the cover of the dock.

LED displays

Colour	Meaning
Blue	Smartphone is being charged. The blue LED stays illuminated when the inserted Qi-compatible smartphone is fully charged.
Orange	Smartphone is not being charged. The temperature at the smartphone may be too high or there may be foreign bodies in the charging cradle.
Red	Smartphone is not being charged. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Forgotten phone warning

General

A warning can be issued if a smartphone with Qi certification has been left in the wireless charging tray when exiting the vehicle.

The forgotten phone warning is shown in the instrument cluster.

Enabling/disabling the forgotten warning

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Mobile phone reminder"

System limits

The charging current may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- Due to excessive temperatures of the tray and smartphone.
- When there are objects between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- If storage media or electronic cards, for example, chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, are located between the smartphone and the wireless charging tray.
- By protective sleeves and covers that exceed a thickness of 2 mm, 0.07 in.
- By protective sleeves and covers made of unsuitable material, e.g. with magnetic parts.
- By add-on parts on the smartphone, e.g. holders.
- By settings on the smartphone, for example for charging. Follow the relevant instructions on the control display and in the

instructions for the smartphone, if applicable.

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, for example, mobile phones, or loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior while driving, for example, in the event of an accident, or when braking or performing evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Secure devices connected to the vehicle with a cable or loose objects.

WARNING

Open storage compartment lids, e.g. for the glove compartment or centre armrest, protrude into the interior and can interfere with the deployment of airbags. In addition, objects inside the open storage compartment may be thrown into the interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or a braking or avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury. Immediately close storage compartments after use.

WARNING

Anti-slip mats can damage the instrument panel. Attached objects can become detached. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Do not use anti-slip mats.

Glove compartment

Opening the glove compartment

Pull the handle.

Closing the glove compartment

Shut the lid.

Fold-down compartment

Opening the fold-down compartment

Press the button and open the cover.

Storage compartments in the doors

General

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Breakable objects, for example glass bottles or glasses, may get broken in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. Splinters may scatter throughout the interior. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Do not use breakable objects during a journey. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartments in the centre console

Opening the storage compartment

Press the cover.

Closing the storage compartment

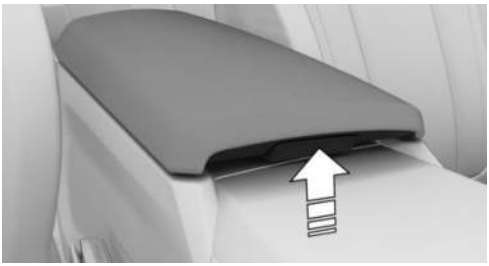
Pull back the cover by the handle strip.

Front centre armrest

General

There is a storage compartment in the centre armrest between the seats.

Opening the centre armrest



Press the button.

Close the centre armrest

Press the cover down until it engages.

Cup holder front

Safety information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking an avoidance manoeuvre. Spilled fluids can distract the driver from the traffic situation, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot beverages may damage the cup holders or cause scalding. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that the containers are firmly seated in the cup holder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatterproof containers. Clean up spilled fluids immediately. Do not transport hot drinks.

Opening the cup holder

Press the cover.

There are two cup holders in the centre console.

Closing the cup holder

Pull back the cover by the handle strip.

Cup holder rear

Safety information

WARNING

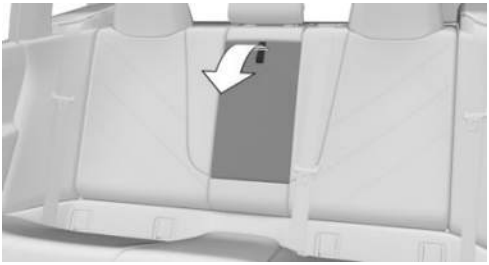
Unsuitable containers placed in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking an avoidance manoeuvre. Spilled fluids can distract the driver from the traffic situation, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot beverages may damage the cup holders or cause scalding. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that the containers are firmly seated in the cup holder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatterproof containers. Clean up spilled fluids immediately. Do not transport hot drinks.

NOTICE

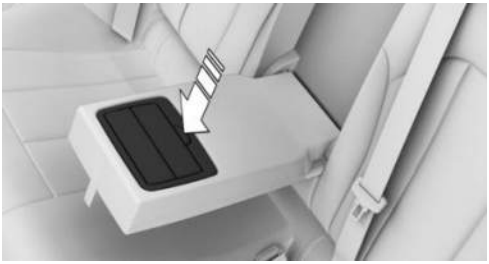
If the cup holder is open, the centre armrest cannot be folded back. There is a risk of material damage. Press back the covers before folding up the centre armrest.

Opening the cup holder

1. Fold down the centre armrest.



2. To open the cup holder, press the button.



Closing the cup holder

Press both covers back in one after the other and fold back the centre armrest.

Coat hooks

General

The coat hooks are located on the grab handles in the rear.

Safety information

WARNING

Items of clothing on the coat hooks can impair visibility when driving. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Hang items of clothing from the coat hooks in such a way that they do not obstruct visibility when driving.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the coat hooks can present a danger, for example if objects are thrown around as a result of braking or avoidance manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for example items of clothing, on the coat hooks.

Luggage compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Loading

Safety information

WARNING

A high total weight can make the tyres overheat, causing internal damage and a sudden tyre pressure loss. Handling characteristics may be adversely affected, for example reduced directional stability, longer stopping distance and altered steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Please comply with the permitted load index of the tyre, and do not exceed the permitted total weight.

WARNING

If the permitted total weight and the permitted axle loads are exceeded, the operational safety of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. There is a risk of accident. Do not exceed the permitted total weight and permitted axle loads.

WARNING

Devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, for example, mobile phones, or loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior while driving, for example, in the event of an accident, or when braking or performing evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Secure devices connected to the vehicle with a cable or loose objects.

WARNING

Incorrectly stowed objects may slip or be thrown into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking an avoidance manoeuvre. Vehicle occupants could be struck and injured. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Stow and secure objects and the load correctly.

NOTICE

Liquids in the luggage compartment may cause damage. There is a risk of material damage. Ensure that no liquids leak out into the luggage compartment.

Stowing and securing loads in the vehicle

- Wrap protective material around any sharp corners and edges on the load.
- Do not stack loads above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Fully fold down the rear seat backrests if stowing a large load.
- Secure load-securing equipment to the lashing eyes in the luggage compartment.

- Small and lightweight load: secure with tensioning straps or retaining straps or with a luggage compartment net.
- Large and heavy loads: secure with lashing straps.
- Heavy loads: stow as far forward as possible, low down and directly behind the rear seat backrests.
- Very heavy loads: stow as far forward as possible, low down and directly behind the rear seat backrests. If there are no passengers on the rear seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.

Lashing eyes in the luggage compartment

General

Load-securing equipment, for example lashing straps, tensioning straps, retaining straps or luggage compartment nets, must be secured to the lashing eyes.

Overview

The lashing eyes are located in the luggage compartment.

Multifunction hook

General

There is a multifunction hook on the left-hand side in the luggage compartment.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the multifunction hook may present a danger, for example if objects are flung around when performing braking and avoidance manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Only hang lightweight objects from the multifunction hooks. Transport heavy luggage in the luggage compartment and make sure that it is suitably secured.

Net

Smaller objects can be stowed in the net on the left-hand side.

Side storage compartment, right

There is a storage compartment on the right side of the luggage compartment.

Side storage compartment, left

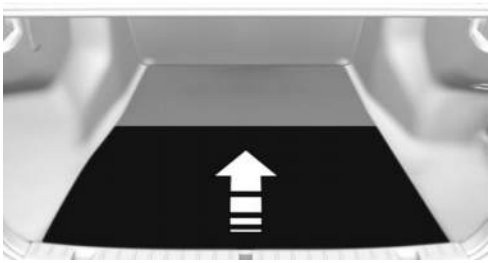
There is a storage compartment on the left side of the luggage compartment.

Luggage compartment floor

General

There is a storage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.

Opening the storage compartment



Fold up the luggage compartment floor.

For emergency spare wheel: enlarging the luggage compartment

Principle

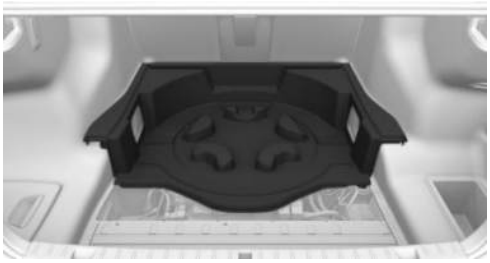
The emergency spare wheel and associated components can be removed temporarily to increase the luggage compartment space.

Taking out the emergency spare wheel and storage elements

1. To remove the luggage compartment floor, pull it up directly behind the rear seat backrests, or fold down the rear seat backrest, see page 302, if necessary.

2. Remove the wheel change set and emergency spare wheel, see page 351.
3. Release the tensioning strap from the lashing eyes.
4. Remove the storage compartment.

5. Remove the storage tray.



6. Insert the luggage compartment floor.

Inserting the emergency spare wheel and storage elements

Proceed in reverse order to insert the emergency spare wheel and storage elements.

Through-loading system

Principle

The luggage compartment can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General

The rear seat backrest is split 40–20–40. The right rear seat backrest and the centre section can be folded down individually. The left rear seat backrest can be folded down together with the centre section.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the luggage compartment. The centre section can be folded down separately from the rear.

Safety information

WARNING

When folding down the rear seat backrest, vehicle parts can be damaged or body parts can become trapped. There is a danger of injury or material damage. When folding down, make sure that the movement range of the rear seat backrest, including the head restraint, is kept clear.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured load may be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or taking avoidance manoeuvre. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after it has been folded back.

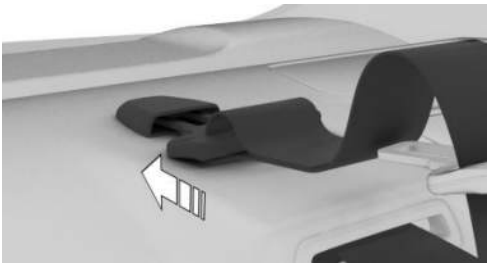
WARNING

If the seat is not set properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have restricted or no stability at all. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the seat backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible and if necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Folding down the rear seat backrest

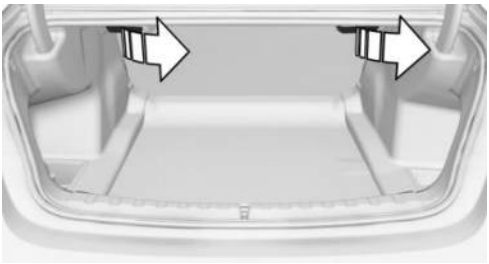
From the luggage compartment

1. Unlock the belt lock of the centre seat belt in the rear passenger compartment with the seat belt tongue of another seat belt.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue at the end of the seat belt into the designated mounting on the parcel shelf.



3. Push the respective head restraint as far down as possible.
4. Pull the corresponding lever in the luggage compartment to unlock the rear seat

backrest. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves slightly to the front.



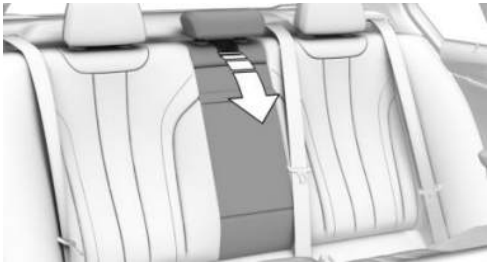
5. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Folding back the rear seat backrest

1. Fold back the rear seat backrest into the seat position and engage.
2. Remove seat belt tongue from the mount on the parcel shelf.
3. Put seat belt tongue into the belt lock of the centre safety belt. The seat belt tongue must be heard to engage.

Folding down the centre section

1. Fold down the middle head restraint.
2. Pull the lever and fold the centre section forwards.



Driving precautions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Running-in instructions

General

Moving parts need to adjust to each other.

The following notes will help to maximise the vehicle's service life and efficiency.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

Safety information

WARNING

New parts and components can cause safety and driver assistance systems to respond with a delay. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. After new parts have been installed or if the vehicle is new, drive moderately and take action promptly if necessary. Please comply with the running-in instructions for the corresponding parts and components.

Engine, transmission and differential

Up to 2000 km, 1200 miles

Do not exceed the maximum rotational speed and vehicle speed:

- With petrol engines,4500 rpm and 160 km/h, 100 mph.
- With diesel engine,3500 rpm and 150 km/h, 93 mph.

Generally avoid kickdown and driving under full load.

From 2000 km, 1200 miles onwards

Rotational speed and vehicle speed can be gradually increased.

Tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads must be run in to avoid effects that can lead to brake noise. Drive moderately for the first 500 km, approx. 300 miles.

After fitting new parts

Please comply with the running-in instructions again if the components previously referred to are renewed.

General driving notes

Closing the boot lid

Safety information

WARNING

When open, the boot lid protrudes above the vehicle, and in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvre, it can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users, or damage the vehicle. In addition, exhaust fumes or water may enter into the vehicle interior. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Do not drive with the boot lid open.

Driving with the boot lid open

If the vehicle still needs to be driven with the boot lid open:

- Close all the windows and the glass sunroof.
- Adjust the blower output to a high setting.
- Maintain a moderate speed.
- Secure the boot lid, for example, with a tensioning belt.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If there is insufficient ground clearance, for example, when driving into underground car parks or possibly at kerbs, some vehicle parts, for example, spoilers, and the underbody may come into contact with the ground. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure that there is sufficient ground clearance. Adapt your driving style to suit the conditions.

Driving at high speeds

WARNING

At high speeds, damage to vehicle parts can adversely affect vehicle handling characteristics. Such parts include the tyres, underbody and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Have the damage rectified by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. Do not drive at high speed until the damage has been repaired.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

High temperatures may occur under the vehicle body during driving, for example because of the exhaust system. Contact with the exhaust system may cause burns. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust assembly, including exhaust pipe.

WARNING

If flammable materials, for example leaves or grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. There is a risk of fire and injury. Never remove the heat shields installed in this area or apply underbody protection to them. Make sure that when driving, idling or parking, no flammable materials can come into contact with hot vehicle parts.

Exhaust gas particulate filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particulate filter traps soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high

temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particulate filter as when required.

General

The cleaning process takes a few minutes, during which the following may occur:

- The combustion engine may temporarily run a little roughly.
- A slightly higher rotational speed may be required to achieve the usual power output.
- Fuel consumption may increase. The increased fuel consumption is shown as the mean value in the current consumption display.
- There may be a small amount of smoke from the exhaust system, even after stopping the combustion engine.
- Noise, for example, from radiator fan operation, may be heard even several minutes after stopping the combustion engine.

It is normal for the radiator fan to keep running for several minutes, even after short journeys.

With diesel engine: Cleaning the exhaust gas particulate filter while driving

The diesel particulate filter has a self-cleaning feature. It is not necessary to take any other action, for example, adapting your driving style.

Condensation in the drive system

The proper function of the drive is ensured by various driver profiles. A permanent, low-load driving style can result in impaired functioning, for example, formation of condensation in the drive system. Occasionally longer engine running times with higher loads can counteract this.

With petrol engine:

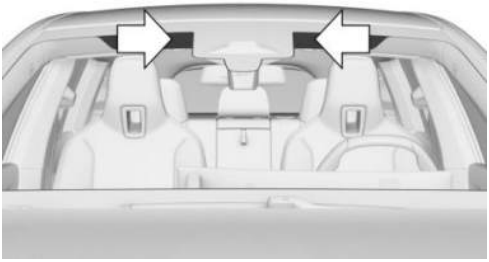
If condensation has formed in the drive system, a corresponding Check Control message is displayed. In this case, proceed as follows the next time you drive outside of built-up areas for around 30 minutes.

- Engage selector lever position S.
- Deactivate the Cruise Control System.
- Activate SPORT drive mode using the Driving Experience Control.
- If possible, drive at alternating speeds.

For further information:

- Engaging the selector lever position: Steptronic transmission, see page 135.
- Driving Experience Control, see page 140.

Attachment point of wireless systems



With climate comfort windscreen: the marked area does not have a heat-reflecting coating.

The marked area can be used to attach wireless systems, e.g.:

- Garage door opener.
- Electronic toll collection devices.
- Payment systems.

Radio signals

⚠ WARNING

Certain vehicle functions may be affected by interference from high-frequency radio signals. Such signals are output from a series of transmission systems, for example from air traffic beacons or relay stations for mobile telecommunications.

We recommend you consult your Service Partner should you experience any difficulties.

Mobile radio in the vehicle

WARNING

There is a possibility of reciprocal interference between the vehicle electronics and mobile radio devices. Radiation is generated when mobile radio devices are transmitting. There is a danger of injury and material damage. If possible, only use mobile communication devices, for example, mobile phones, in the vehicle interior if they are connected directly to an external aerial or personal eSIM in order to eliminate reciprocal interference and to divert the radiation away from the vehicle interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a water wedge can form between the tyres and the road.

This phenomenon is known as aquaplaning and can cause the tyre to lose contact partially or fully with the road surface, meaning that the vehicle can neither be steered, nor the brakes properly applied.

Driving through water

General

Please comply with the following when driving through water:

- Only drive through when the combustion engine is running.
- To prevent the combustion engine from switching off, deactivate the Automatic Start/Stop function, e.g. engage selector lever position S.
- The combustion engine is also not switched off in selector lever position R.
- Only drive through still water.
- Only drive through water up to a max. depth of 25 cm, 9.8 in.
- Drive through water at a walking speed of no more than 5 km/h, 3 mph.

For further information:

Automatic Start/Stop function, see page 132.

Safety information

NOTICE

Driving too quickly through excessively deep water can cause water to enter the engine compartment, electrical system or transmission. There is a risk of material damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum water depth and maximum speed specified above.

Safe braking

General

The vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System as standard.

Perform full braking in situations that require it. In order to achieve the best possible braking force assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking. The vehicle remains steerable. Steer as smoothly as possible to avoid any obstacles.

Hydraulic regulating sounds indicate that the anti-lock braking system is regulating.

Objects in the movement range of the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Ensure that items in the vehicle are stowed securely and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after removal, for example for cleaning.

Pedal feel when driving off

When drive-ready state is switched on from rest state, an unfamiliar pedal feel can occur, for example short or long pedal travel. Once you have completely released the brake pedal, the pedal feel will be back to normal.

Wet roads

In case of wet weather, road salt exposure or heavy rain, apply the brakes lightly every few kilometres/miles. Ensure that you do not obstruct other road users when doing so.

The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

This helps to maintain braking power so that it is available immediately when needed.

Downhill gradient

General

When driving on long or steep downhill stretches, use the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise the brake system can overheat and the braking effect is reduced.

Engine braking effect can be additionally increased by manually shifting down, even into first gear where required.

Safety information

WARNING

Even slight but continuous pressure on the brake pedal can cause overheating, brake wear or even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Avoid excessive loads on the brake.

WARNING

In neutral or with drive-ready state switched off, safety-relevant functions, for example engine braking effect or steering and braking force assistance, are either restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not drive in neutral or with the drive-ready state switched off.

Corrosion of the brake disc

Corrosion of the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads increase in the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended stationary periods when the vehicle is not used.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

During braking, corroded brake discs may cause juddering which usually cannot be eliminated.

Condensation when vehicle is parked

When the automatic air conditioning is operating, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Driving on a racing track

WARNING

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport competitions or similar. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not use the vehicle in M Sport competitions or similar.

The higher mechanical and thermal loads involved when driving on racing tracks lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends special sport tyres, for example, high-performance tyres. Sport tyres are adapted to the special requirements of a sporty driving style. Information about sport tyres can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Before and after driving on a racing track, have the vehicle checked at an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Roof bars

General

Roof racks are available as optional accessories.

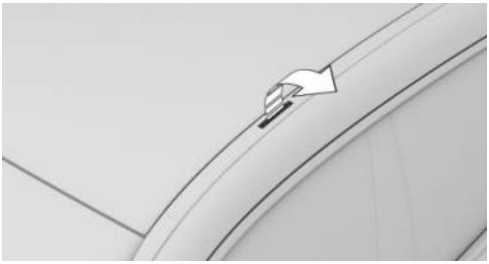
Safety information

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with roof bars, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Driving with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Roof strip with flaps

The mounting points are located on the roof strip above the doors.



Fold the cover outwards.

Fitting

Follow the installation instructions for the roof rack.

Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the glass sunroof.

Loading

Loaded roof bars change the driving and steering behaviour of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- Do not exceed the permitted roof and axle load or the permitted total weight.
- Distribute the roof load evenly.
- The roof load must not be spread over an area that is too large.
- Place heavy items of luggage at the bottom.
- Securely fasten the luggage, for example with tensioning straps.
- Do not allow objects to protrude into the swing range of the boot lid.
- Driving behaviour. Avoid driving off and braking suddenly and fast cornering.

Trailer and rear carrier

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

General

The permitted trailer loads, axle loads, trailer nose weights and permitted total weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

For Australia: note

The use of trailers and rear carriers is not intended for this vehicle in Australia.

Before a journey

Trailer nose weight

The trailer nose weight should not be less than the minimum trailer nose weight of 25 kg, 55 lb. Utilise the maximum trailer nose weight as far as possible.

The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the trailer nose weight reduce the maximum load of the towing vehicle. The trailer nose weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the permitted total weight of the towing vehicle.

Loading

Distribute the load as evenly as possible over the loading area.

Stow the load as low down as possible and as close as possible to the trailer axle. A low centre of trailer gravity makes the car/trailer combination much more stable and safe to drive.

The permitted total weight of the trailer and the permitted trailer load of the vehicle must not be exceeded. The lower value is the limit which should be adhered to.

Tyre inflation pressure

Check the vehicle's and the trailer's tyre inflation pressures carefully.

On the vehicle, the tyre inflation pressure for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the regulations of the manufacturer apply.

Re-initialise the flat tyre monitor or reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor or after the tyre inflation pressure has been corrected or a trailer has been attached or detached.

For further information:

- Tyre inflation pressure information, see page 326.
- Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 337.
- Flat tyre monitor, see page 344.

Exterior mirrors

Two exterior mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into your field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this type are available as optional accessories from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Power consumption

General

Before the start of a journey, check the function of the trailer rear lights.

When towing a caravan, only operate power consumers briefly to avoid placing an excessive load on the vehicle battery.

Not for Australia: Trailer rear lights

The power output of the trailer's rear lights must not exceed the following values:

- Turn indicators: 42 watts per side.
- Rear lights: 50 watts per side.
- Brake lights: 84 watts total.
- Rear fog lights: 42 watts total.
- Reversing lights: 42 watts total.

Care of trailer tow hitch

Swivel in the ball head before using steam-jet cleaners or high-pressure cleaners on the vehicle.

Do not clean ball head with a high-pressure cleaner.

Not for Australia: Trailer tow hitch with electrically adjustable ball head

General

The adjustable ball head is located on the underside of the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

If the ball head is not locked, unstable driving conditions or accidents can result. There is a risk of accident and material damage. Before a journey with a trailer or rear carrier, check that the ball head is correctly locked.

NOTICE

The trailer tow hitch is intended to be used with a trailer. If the ball head of the trailer tow hitch has been swivelled out, it may become jammed if the vehicle is subsequently driven without a trailer or rear carrier. There is a risk of material damage. Swivel the ball head back in when driving without a trailer or rear carrier.

Overview

The button for swivelling the ball head in and out is in the luggage compartment.

Operating requirements

- Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- Luggage compartment is open.
- The trailer socket is not occupied.
- Trailer operation is not activated.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

The LED in the button illuminates green if the system is operational.

Swivelling out the ball head

1. Open the luggage compartment.
2. Step out of the swing range of the ball head behind the vehicle.
3.  Press the button in the luggage compartment.

   The ball head swivels out. The LED flashes green.
4. Wait until the ball head has reached the end position.

   The LED in the button illuminates green when the ball head has reached an end position.

If the ball head is not properly locked, the LED in the button lights up red.

Swivelling the ball head back in

1. Disconnect the trailer or rear carrier.
2. Remove any fittings for the track-stabilising devices.
3. Remove the power supply connector for the trailer and any adapter from the trailer socket.
4.  Press the button in the luggage compartment.

   The ball head swivels inwards. The LED flashes green.
5. Wait until the ball head has reached the end position.

Cancelling the swivel operation

General

The swivel movement is interrupted, might be reversed or is not performed if electrical current limits are exceeded, for example at very low temperatures, or if mechanical resistance is encountered. LED illuminates red.

Repeating the swivel operation

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Step out of the swing range of the ball head behind the vehicle.
3.  Press the button in the luggage compartment and hold it until the ball head has moved completely in or out.

If necessary, repeat the swivel movement with the button pressed and the engine running.

The LED in the button illuminates green when the ball head has reached an end position.

If the swivel movement is repeatedly interrupted, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

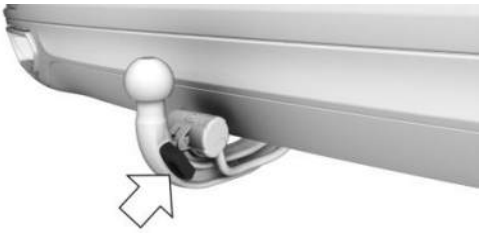
Trailer socket

The trailer socket is located on the trailer tow hitch.

Open the cover.

Eye for trailer securing cable

General



There is an eye on the trailer tow hitch for fastening the trailer securing cable.

Safety information

WARNING

If the trailer's securing cable or securing chain is not attached correctly, the trailer may come detached unintentionally. There is a risk of accident. Before driving with a trailer, make sure that the trailer's securing cable or securing chain is correctly attached to the eye of the trailer tow hitch.

WARNING

If the trailer's securing cable or securing chain is not attached correctly, the securing cable or securing chain may become entangled and damage the vehicle or trailer. There is a risk of accident. Before driving with a trailer, make sure that the trailer's securing cable or securing chain is correctly attached to the eye of the trailer tow hitch. Make sure that the securing cable or securing chain has the necessary clearance and is not dragging on the ground.

Driving with a trailer or rear carrier

General

When driving with a trailer or rear carrier, some driver assistance systems are unavailable or only available to a limited extent. A Check Control message is shown where applicable. The driving stability control systems, e.g., Anti-lock Braking System, can still be used.

If necessary, select another driver assistance system that can be used in trailer operation, e.g., Active Cruise Control.

For further information:

- Driver assistance systems, see page 222.
- Driving stability control systems, see page 218.
- Active Cruise Control, see page 230.

Safety information

WARNING

It is not possible to secure a trailer adequately with a defective trailer tow hitch. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not continue driving with a defective trailer tow hitch.

WARNING

Speeds in excess of approximately 80 km/h, 50 mph, can be enough to cause trailer snaking, depending on the type of trailer and the load being carried. There is a risk of accident and material damage.

Keep to an appropriate speed when towing a trailer. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be adapted because of the increased axle load in trailer operation. Driving with inadequate tyre inflation pressure can damage the tyres. There is a risk of accident and material damage. Do not exceed a speed of 100 km/h, 60 mph. Increase the tyre inflation pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar. Note the maximum possible tyre inflation pressure stated on the tyre.

Activating trailer operation

General

When driving with a trailer or rear carrier and the trailer socket is not occupied, some driver assistance systems may only operate to a limited extent or may malfunction. In order to avoid malfunctions, activate trailer operation.

Activating trailer operation

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver assistance"
5. "Trailer mode"
6. Select the desired setting.

Upward gradients

General

Trailer operation is permitted for gradients of up to 12 %.

If higher trailer loads have been subsequently approved, the limit is 8%.

Driving off on upward gradients

The parking brake is automatically released when the accelerator pedal is operated.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1.  Pull and release the switch shortly before starting.

   The parking brake is engaged.
2. To drive off, press the accelerator pedal with sufficient force.

Downhill gradient

On downward gradients, a car/trailer combination tends to start snaking movement earlier.

Before the downhill gradient, shift down manually to the next-lowest gear and drive downhill slowly.

High loads and high outside temperature

NOTICE

On long journeys with high trailer loads, a high outside temperature and a low fuel tank capacity, the fuel system can overheat leading to reduced engine output. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time. On long journeys with high trailer loads and a high outside temperature, make sure that the fuel tank is more than 1/4 full.

Trailer Stability Control

Principle

Trailer Stability Control assists in intercepting trailer snaking movements.

The system detects snaking movements and promptly brakes the vehicle so that the vehicle speed falls to below the critical speed range and the outfit is stabilised.

General

The system can also activate in extreme driving situations when the trailer socket is occupied without a trailer attached, for example when using a rear bike carrier with lighting.

Operating requirement

- A trailer is attached.
- The trailer socket is occupied.
- Vehicle speed is greater than approx. 65 km/h, approx. 40 mph.

System limits

The system is unable to intervene or intervenes too late, in the following situations for example:

- If a trailer folds instantly, for example on slippery or loose road surfaces.
- If a trailer with a high centre of gravity tips over before snaking movement is detected.
- If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or has failed.
- If the power consumption of a trailer is too low to be detected by the system, for example due to LED rear lights.

Rear carrier

Principle

Rear carriers, for example, rear bike carriers, are devices that are mounted on the vehicle to facilitate the transport of luggage.

General

Rear carriers that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer are available as optional accessories.

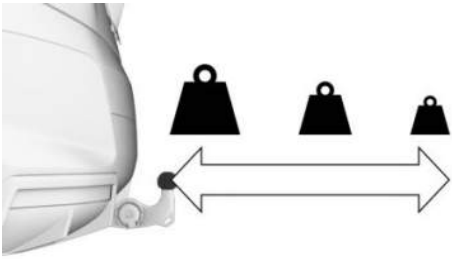
Rear bike carriers for up to three bicycles can be used.

For Australia: only use rear carriers that are mounted directly on the mount for the trailer tow hitch.

Fitting

Follow the installation instructions for the rear carrier.

Loading



The permitted total weight of the rear carrier when loaded depends on how far its centre of gravity is from the ball head.

- If the centre of gravity is up to 30 cm, approx. 11.8 in away from the ball head, the total weight of the rear carrier must not exceed 75 kg, 165 lbs.
- If the centre of gravity is 60 cm, approx. 23.5 in from the ball head, the total weight of the rear carrier must not exceed 35 kg, 77 lbs.
- Stow heavy loads as close as possible to the ball head.
- Fasten loads securely to the rear carrier and secure them against sliding around.

Before a journey

Before starting the journey, check the function of the rear lights of the rear carrier.

The maximum power of the rear lights on the rear carrier must not exceed the maximum power of the trailer's rear lights.

To prevent functional limitations and malfunctions affecting driver assistance systems, activate trailer operation accordingly.

For further information:

- Power consumption, see page 312.
- Activating trailer operation, see page 314.

Driving with a rear carrier

Loaded rear carriers change the driving and steering behaviour of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- Do not exceed the permitted axle load or the permitted total weight.
- Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking suddenly or fast cornerings.

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Reducing fuel consumption

Principle

The vehicle has a wide range of technologies for reducing consumption and emissions.

Some measures can influence fuel consumption and environmental pollution:

- Remove unnecessary loads from the vehicle.
- Remove add-on parts after use, for example, a rear carrier.
- Close the windows and the electric glass sunroof while driving.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure regularly and increase if necessary.
- Switch off the combustion engine if stopping for a longer period.
- Use anticipatory driving and let the vehicle roll more often, for example.
- Deactivate functions that are not required, for example rear window heating.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.

ECO PRO

Principle

ECO PRO supports an efficient driving style. To achieve this, the engine control and comfort functions, for example the air conditioning output, are adapted.

The combustion engine is disconnected from the transmission in selector lever position D when certain conditions are met. The vehicle rolls in idle to optimise consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

In addition, situational notes, ECO PRO tips, can be displayed which help you to drive with optimum efficiency.

The range extension that is achieved by adopting these tips can be shown in the instrument cluster as a bonus range.

Steptronic transmission: the combustion engine is disconnected from the transmission in selector lever position D when certain conditions are met. The vehicle rolls in idle to optimise consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

General

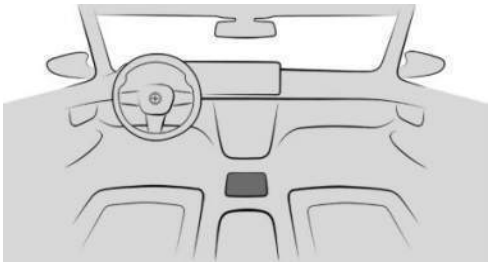
The system comprises the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ECO PRO bonus range.
- ECO PRO seat climate control.
- ECO PRO climate control.
- ECO PRO view.
- Route-ahead Assistant.
- Driving style analysis.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

Overview

Button in the vehicle



ECO PRO ECO PRO

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Via iDrive

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Drivetrain and chassis"
5. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
6. Select the desired setting.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- ECO PRO seat heating.
- ECO PRO climate control.
- ECO PRO light.

ECO PRO seat climate control

The output of the seat heating is reduced when ECO PRO is activated.

ECO PRO climate control

Climate control is adjusted for efficient consumption.

To achieve this, the set temperature is adjusted slightly and the interior is heated or cooled more slowly to reduce consumption.

ECO PRO light

The power output of the exterior mirror heating and the rear window heating is reduced.

Depending on the equipment, the dynamic ECO lighting function is activated additionally.

Resetting settings

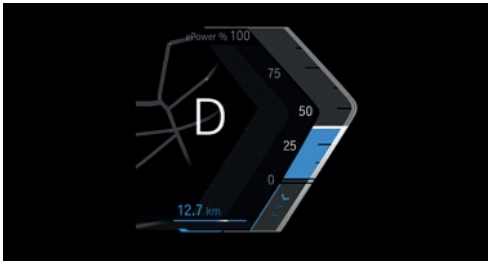
1. ECO PRO Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. "Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Using ECO PRO efficiently

Optimising driving style

Power display

When activating the ECO PRO drive mode, the display changes to a special display.



When driving efficiently, the power display is coloured blue.

The display will change to grey if the driving style is inefficient.

For efficient driving style, activate adaptive recuperation.

Display inefficient driving style

When driving above the efficient range, an arrow will be displayed.

For example, the display occurs in the following situations:

- Excessive acceleration.
- Excessive speed.
- Special route section, for example roundabout, ahead.

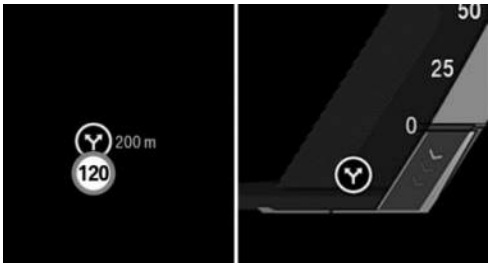
In addition, a deceleration notification is displayed.

Route-ahead Assistant

Principle

The display informs the driver about decelerations ahead, for example, speed limit reductions or roundabouts, even when they are not yet visible. The situation-specific information and distance to the route section ahead is shown above the current speed limit in the instrument cluster. If there is a notice, the speed can be reduced in an energy-saving way by coasting using the corresponding accelerator pedal position until the section of road is reached.

Display in the instrument cluster



A note regarding a section of the route ahead is given as a recommendation to allow the vehicle to roll.

An icon, for example a turn, indicates the detected section of the route:

Icon	Section of the road in front
	Turning.
	Speed limit or town entrance.
	Roundabout.
	Corner.

System limits

For example, the display of the upcoming route sections is not available in the following situations:

- With temporary and variable speed limits, for example, at road works.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- If there are country-dependent restrictions on map-based route sections.

Driving style analysis

Principle

The function helps you to develop a particularly efficient driving style and to save fuel.

It does this by analysing your driving style. The evaluation is performed in various categories and is shown on the control display.

Using this display, the individual driving style can be adjusted to save fuel.

General

Adapting the driving style can increase the range of the vehicle.

The current trip is analysed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

This gain in range is shown as a bonus range on the instrument cluster and control display.

Operating requirement

The function is available in ECO PRO drive mode.

Going to efficiency evaluation

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"

For further information:

Live Vehicle, see page 147

Display on the control display

The display of the efficiency analysis shows the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the larger the area that is displayed in colour and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced area will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

Adaptive recuperation

Principle

Adaptive recuperation supports an anticipatory and comfort-oriented driving style.

Based on the situation, the system decides whether energy is recovered through recuperation, or how the vehicle rolls.

In vehicles with mild hybrid technology, the power of recuperation is adaptive, which causes the vehicle to decelerate at different rates while coasting.

General

Map data and various sensors analyse the current driving situation, for example the distance to the vehicle in front.

Adaptive recuperation is available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Operating requirements

The system is active under the following conditions:

- Selector lever position D is engaged.
- Brake not pressed.
- Accelerator pedal not activated.
- ECO PRO drive mode is activated.
- The Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Deactivating/activating adaptive recuperation

Adaptive recuperation is active when all functional requirements are met.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

Adaptive recuperation can be displayed on the instrument cluster.

For further information:

Power display, see page 158.

Display on the control display

Adaptive recuperation can be displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Current driving condition, see page 166.

System limits

Adaptive recuperation is not possible or only possible to a limited extent in the following situations, for example:

- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- If there are country-dependent restrictions on map-based route sections.

- With a temporary and variable speed limit, such as at road works.
- When Cruise Control is active.
- If the sensors of the driver assistance systems are damaged, dirty or covered.

Engine-off coasting/ coasting

Principle

The drivetrain allows efficient coasting in the D selector lever position with minimal deceleration. This drive state is called coasting. This reduces fuel consumption.

Vehicles with mild hybrid technology do not consume fuel while coasting.

General

An anticipatory driving style helps to use the function frequently and supports the consumption-reducing effect of coasting.

The coasting driving condition is automatically adapted to the particular driving situation.

Depending on the equipment, the coasting driving condition is displayed in the Live Vehicle menu as Efficient coasting.

For further information:

Current driving condition, see page 166.

Examples of driving situations

If a distance can be covered without foreseeable braking, it is helpful to roll this distance.

The following examples of driving situations may be suitable for this:

- Rolling on straight downhill gradient with no obstacles.
- Rolling to a stop on a section of route without obstacles.

Avoid late or heavy braking.

Operating requirements

- Selector lever position D is engaged.
- The brake is not pressed.
- The accelerator pedal is not pressed.
- ECO PRO drive mode is activated.
- The Dynamic Stability Control is activated.
- The system detects a calm and smooth driving style.
- The system detects a corresponding distance to vehicles in front.
- The system does not detect any traffic situations or a course of the road that may pose a problem.

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 25 km/h, 16 mph to 160 km/h, 100 mph.

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

Depending on the equipment, the coasting drive state can be controlled via the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

Operate the right-hand shift paddle for longer to activate.

Operate the left-hand shift paddle to deactivate.

System limits

The coasting driving condition is not possible or only possible to a limited extent in the following situations, for example:

- If Cruise Control is active.
- If the sensors of the driver assistance systems are damaged, dirty or covered.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Things to consider when refuelling

General

Before refuelling, take note of the fuel grade information.

On vehicles with diesel engine, the fuel filler neck is designed for refuelling at diesel pumps.

When topping up, hook the fuel pump nozzle fully into the filler pipe. Lifting the fuel pump nozzle while topping up will cause the following to happen:

- The supply is stopped too soon.
- Fuel vapour recovery is less effective.

The fuel tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Please comply with the safety regulations displayed at fuel stations.

For further information:

Fuel grade, see page 355.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the range drops below 50 km, approx. 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. The engine functions are no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

NOTICE

Fuels are poisonous and aggressive substances. Overfilling the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. If fuel comes into contact with paintwork, it can damage it. The environment is polluted. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid overfilling.

Fuel filler cap

Safety information

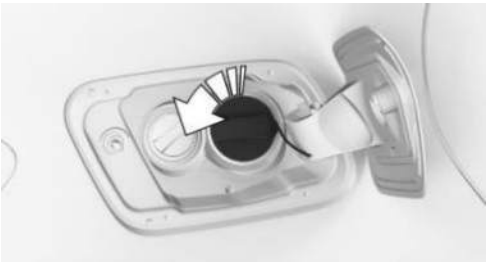
WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel filler cap may become trapped and crushed when turning the cap to close it. As a result, the fuel filler cap cannot be closed properly. Fuel or fuel vapours can leak out. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Make sure that the retaining strap does not get trapped and crushed when closing the fuel filler cap.

Opening

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Turn the fuel filler cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.

Closing

1. Fit the fuel filler cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency release

In certain situations, it may be necessary to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for example if there is an electrical fault.

In this case, have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheels and tyres

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Tyre inflation pressure

General

The tyre condition and tyre inflation pressure influence the following:

- Tyre service life.
- Driving safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

A tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure can heat up significantly and sustain damage. Handling characteristics, for example steering and braking, will be impaired as a result. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Check the tyre inflation pressure regularly, for example twice a month or before any long journey, and correct as necessary.

Tyre inflation pressure information

On the body pillar

The tyre inflation pressure information can be found on the tyre pressure label on the body pillar of the driver's door.

The tyre inflation pressures apply to all tyre sizes and recommended tyre makes that have been approved by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable for the model version. The list can also include tyre sizes that are only suitable in combination with specific equipment.

Information about approved wheels and tyres for the vehicle can be requested from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or specialist workshop.

The tyre inflation pressure appropriate for the respective load conditions should be used. For partially loaded vehicles, the specified tyre inflation pressure for a partially loaded vehicle, for example, is the optimum tyre inflation pressure.

For Australia/New Zealand

⚠ WARNING

The inflation pressures on the tyre label are applicable only for tyre types explicitly mentioned on the label. Different tyre inflation pressures may be required for tyres not

explicitly mentioned which, however, meet specifications listed on the label in terms of size, speed category and load rating/load index. Please obtain adequate inflation pressures in accordance with the tyre manufacturer's specifications from your tyre dealer.

On the control display

The current tyre inflation pressures and the specified tyre inflation pressures for the installed tyres can be displayed on the control display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tyre sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the fitted tyres.

The current tyre inflation pressure value is shown on each tyre.

The specified tyre inflation pressure value is located towards the bottom of the control display.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

General

The tyres heat up while driving. The tyre inflation pressure increases with the temperature of the tyre.

The tyres have a natural, uniform tyre pressure loss.

The pressures displayed by some pressure gauges may be up to 0.1 bar too low.

Checking using tyre inflation pressure information on the body pillar

1. Determine the specified tyre inflation pressures for the tyres installed on the vehicle.
2. Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, using a pressure gauge, for example.
3. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.
4. Check that all valve caps are screwed onto the tyre valves.

The tyre inflation pressure information on the tyre pressure label on the body pillar only relates to cold tyres or tyres at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tyre inflation pressures when the tyres are cold, i.e.:

- If the vehicle has been driven a distance of no more than 2 km, 1.25 miles.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a journey.

If equipped with an emergency tyre: check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the luggage compartment regularly and correct if necessary.

Checking using the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
5. Check if the current tyre inflation pressures match the specified tyre pressure value.
6. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.

The current tyre inflation pressure on the control display may be restricted when the vehicle is stationary. The tyre inflation pressure is updated after a short drive.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

If equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitor, tyre inflation pressure corrections are applied automatically. Make sure that the tyre settings are

correct. For tyres that are not listed in the tyre inflation pressure information on the control display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

If equipped with a flat tyre monitor, reinitialize the flat tyre monitor.

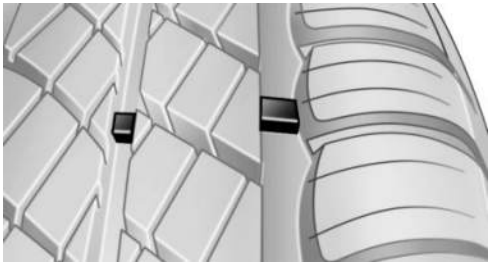
Tyre tread

Safety information

WARNING

If the tyre tread depth is too low, safety may be impaired in critical situations, e.g. aquaplaning or driving on slush. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Note the minimum tyre tread depth of 3 mm, approx. 0.12 in for summer tyres, and 4 mm, approx. 0.16 in for winter and all-season tyres, or follow applicable legal requirements for minimum tread depth.

Minimum tread depth



There are wear indicators from the tyre manufacturer distributed over the tyre circumference with a height of at least 1.6 mm, approx. 0.06 in, which serve as an indicator of tyre tread wear.

The positions of the wear indicators are identified on the tyre sidewall by TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tyre damages

General

Inspect tyres regularly for damage, the presence of foreign bodies and wear.

Symptoms that may indicate tyre damage or a malfunction:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tyre or running noises.
- Unusual vehicle response, such as pronounced pulling to the left or right.
- Uneven wear pattern, for example increased wear near the tyre shoulder.

Damage can be caused by situations such as the following:

- Driving over kerbs.
- Road damage.
- Tyre inflation pressure too low.
- Overloading the vehicle.
- Incorrect tyre storage.

Safety information

WARNING

If the tyres are damaged, the tyre inflation pressure may be reduced, causing you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. If you suspect tyre damage while you are driving, immediately reduce speed and bring the vehicle to a stop. Have the wheels and tyres checked. To do so, carefully drive to an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there. Do not repair damaged tyres. Have them replaced.

WARNING

Driving over kerbs, potholes, or other obstacles can damage the wheels, tyres, and suspension components. Larger wheels have a smaller tyre cross-section. The smaller the tyre cross-section, the higher the risk of tyre damage. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Avoid kerbs, potholes, or other obstacles whenever possible, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Tyre age

Recommendation

Irrespective of the tyre tread depth, change tyres after 6 years at the latest.

Production date

The production date of the tyre can be found on the tyre sidewall.

Designation	Production date
DOT ... 1924	19th week of 2024

Replacement of wheels and tyres

Fitting and balancing

Have the wheel fitted and balanced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Suitable wheels and tyres

General

Depending on the vehicle and equipment, only certain wheel/tyre combinations are suitable.

The wheel/tyre combinations are determined by the manufacturer of the vehicle on the basis of the following criteria:

- Tyre size; for example, tyre width, aspect ratio.
- Wheel size; for example rim diameter, offset.

Additional information on wheel and tyre combinations and specific equipment is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

Wheels and tyres that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends only using wheels and tyres that have been approved as suitable for the vehicle type concerned.

WARNING

Mounted steel wheels can lead to technical problems, for example wheel bolts may work loose and brake discs may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not install steel wheels.

WARNING

Wheel and tyre combinations that are unsuitable for the vehicle can impair the vehicle's driving characteristics and various system functions, for example, the Anti-lock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. The manufacturer of the

vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been rated as suitable for the vehicle type concerned. After a tyre has been damaged, refit the same wheel and tyre combination as the original.

Recommended makes of tyre

For each vehicle, tyre types are developed that are optimised specifically for the individual requirements of the vehicle. For example:

- Handling.
- Comfort.
- Noise characteristics.

The specially developed tyres are marked with a star on the tyre sidewall. After replacing wheels and tyres, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using tyres with a star marking again. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that tyres of the same make and tread design are used.

New tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Retreaded tyres

WARNING

Retreaded tyres may have different tyre carcasses. Their durability may be restricted due to their advanced age. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. The vehicle manufacturer advises against the use of retreaded tyres.

Maximum speed

Safety information

WARNING

If the maximum permitted speed of the fitted tyres is exceeded, the tyres may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not exceed the maximum permitted speed of the tyres.

Speed index

The maximum permitted speed of the tyres is indicated by the speed index.

The speed index can be found in the official tyre designation on the tyre sidewall.

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 160 km/h, 100 mph
R	up to 170 km/h, 106 mph
S	up to 180 km/h, 112 mph
T	up to 190 km/h, 118 mph
H	up to 210 km/h, 131 mph
V	up to 240 km/h, 150 mph
W	up to 270 km/h, 167 mph

Designation	Maximum speed
Y	up to 300 km/h, 186 mph
(Y)	above 300 km/h, 186 mph

Maximum speed of winter tyres

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres, a sign with the maximum permissible speed must be displayed in the field of view. The sign is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Winter tyres

Winter tyres are recommended if driving in winter conditions.

Winter tyres are identified on the tyre sidewall by a symbol with mountain and snowflake, as well as by the letters "M+S".

So-called all-season tyres with M+S marking but without icon with mountain and snowflake have better winter properties than summer tyres. As a rule, all-season tyres do not achieve the performance of winter tyres.

Changing from run-flat tyres

When changing from run-flat tyres to standard tyres, make sure that a emergency spare wheel or a flat tyre kit is available in the vehicle. Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheel change between axles

⚠ WARNING

Wheel change between axles on vehicles with different tyre sizes or rims on the front and rear may cause tyre damage and damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not swap wheels between axles on vehicles with different tyre sizes or rims on the front and rear.

Depending on the individual operating conditions, the tyre tread wears differently on the front and rear axles. To achieve even abrasion, the tyres can be swapped in pairs between the axles. Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. After changing the wheels, check the tyre inflation pressure and correct if necessary.

Storing tyres

Tyre inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure indicated on the tyre sidewall.

Storage

- Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and dark place when not in use.
- Protect the tyres against contamination from oil, grease and solvents.
- Do not leave tyres in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from the wheels or tyres.

Run-flat tyres

Principle

In the event of a complete tyre pressure loss, run-flat tyres enable you to continue driving, with certain restrictions.

General

The wheels are fitted with tyres which are self-supporting to a limited degree. The wheels may also have special rims.

The reinforced sidewall means that the tyre keeps the vehicle mobile to a degree, even if tyre inflation pressure has been lost.

Observe the notes on continuing driving with a flat tyre.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

A run-flat tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering properties. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

⚠ WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can cause heavy trailers to start snaking. There is a risk of accident and material damage. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, 35 mph. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed. Tyre parts can become detached. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Do not continue driving, but instead contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Label

The icon identifying run-flat tyres is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre sidewall.

Remedying a flat tyre

Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle on firm and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- As soon as the traffic flow permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- If necessary, set up the warning triangle or hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.

Tyre repair kit

Principle

With the tyre repair kit, minor tyre damage can be sealed temporarily to allow you to continue driving.

General

- The filled in tyre sealant encloses the damage from the inside when it hardens.
- Please observe the notes on using the tyre repair kit which are on the compressor and the tyre sealant bottle.
- The use of the tyre repair kit can be ineffective in the event of tyre damage from a size of approx. 4 mm, approx. 0.16 in.
- Foreign bodies that have penetrated the tyre should remain inside the tyre. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tyre.
- The compressor can be used to check the tyre inflation pressure.

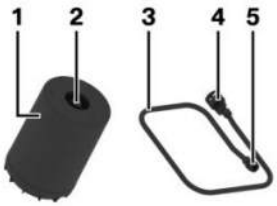
Overview

Storage

Depending on the equipment, storage for the tyre repair kit is provided as follows:

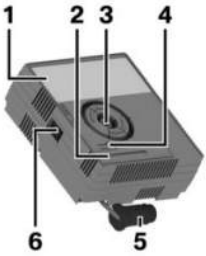
- In the luggage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.
- In the luggage compartment on the left or right side.
- In the luggage compartment behind a side trim panel.

Tyre sealant bottle and filler hose



1 Tyre sealant bottle
2 Tyre sealant bottle outlet
3 Filler hose
4 Tyre sealant bottle connection
5 Wheel valve connection

Compressor



1 Compressor
2 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
3 Tyre sealant bottle holder
4 Pressure reducing valve button
5 Connector for socket
6 On/off switch

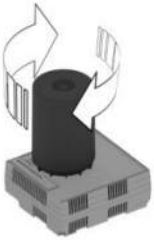
Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle on a firm surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- As soon as the traffic flow permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- If necessary, set up the warning triangle or hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.
- Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the tyre sealant container and attach it in the visible area in the vehicle interior.

Preparing the tyre repair kit

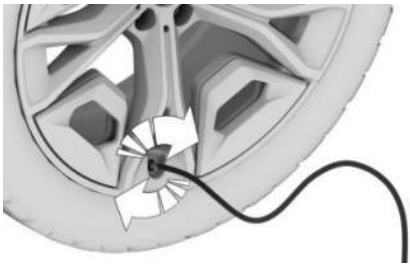
1. Insert the tyre sealant bottle into the mount on the housing of the compressor.

2. Turn the tyre sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.



3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the tyre sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.

4. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.
5. Screw the filler hose connecting piece clockwise onto the valve.



6. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the socket inside the vehicle interior.

Filling with tyre sealant

Safety information

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust gases can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat if operated for too long. There is a risk of material damage. Do not let the compressor run for longer than 10 minutes.

Filling with tyre sealant

1. Switch the compressor on at the device with standby state or drive-ready state switched on.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill in the tyre sealant and reach a tyre inflation pressure of 2.5 bar.

While the tyre is being filled with tyre sealant, the tyre pressure can briefly reach approx. 6 bar. Do not turn off the compressor in this phase.

2. Switch off the compressor at the device.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

Read the tyre pressure on the tyre inflation pressure indicator of the compressor. The tyre pressure must be at least 2.5 bar.

Tyre pressure too high

If the tyre inflation pressure is too high, reduce the tyre pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tyre pressure of 2.5 bar is reached. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the filler hose from the tyre sealant bottle and the valve on the wheel.
3. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
4. Stow the tyre repair kit in the luggage compartment.
5. Immediately drive for 10 km/6 miles to evenly distribute the tyre sealant in the tyre.

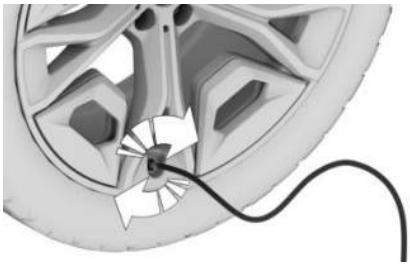
   Do not exceed the permitted maximum speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

   If possible, do not drive slower than 20 km/h, 12 mph.

   Tyre sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotations.

Adjusting the tyre pressure

1. Stop in a suitable area.
2. Connect the filler hose directly to the compressor and turn clockwise in the mount by 90° until it audibly engages.
3. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.
4. Screw the filler hose connecting piece onto the valve.



5. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
6. Read the tyre pressure on the tyre inflation pressure indicator of the compressor.

   Do not continue driving unless a minimum tyre pressure of 1.3 bar is displayed. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
7. Correct the tyre pressure to 2.5 bar.
   - ▷ Increase tyre inflation pressure: with standby or drive-ready state turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.
   - ▷ Reduce tyre inflation pressure: press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

Removing and stowing the tyre repair kit

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Disconnect the filler hose from the compressor and the valve on the wheel.
4. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
5. Stow the tyre repair kit together with the filler hose in the luggage compartment.

Resuming a journey

Re-initialise the flat tyre monitor or reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.

Do not exceed the permitted maximum speed of 80 km/h, approx. 50 mph.

Do not exceed a maximum distance travelled of 200 km/125 miles.

Have the punctured tyre and the tyre sealant bottle of the tyre repair kit replaced as soon as possible.

For further information:

- ▷ Flat tyre monitor, see page 344.
- ▷ Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 337.

System limits

Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if you are unable to put the tyre back in operation.

With Tyre Pressure Monitor: using sealant can damage the air pressure sensor. In this case, have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Snow chains

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

If snow chains are fitted to unsuitable tyres, the snow chains can come into contact with parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only fit snow chains on tyres that the vehicle manufacturer has classified as suitable for use with snow chains.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficiently tightened snow chains can damage tyres and vehicle components. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Ensure that snow chains are always adequately tightened. Re-tighten them if necessary in accordance with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using fine-link snow chains. Certain fine-link snow chains have been tested, found safe for use in traffic and rated as suitable by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tyres of the following wheel/tyre sizes:

Tyre size	Wheel size	Rim offset (IS)
205/60 R16	6.5J x 16	22
225/50 R17	7.5J x 17	30
225/45 R18	7.5J x 18	25

The information on wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tyre sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information about approved wheels and tyres for the vehicle can be requested from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or specialist workshop.

Observe the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

If equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitor: do not reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor when using snow chains. Otherwise, incorrect values may be displayed.

If equipped with a flat tyre monitor: do not initialise the flat tyre monitor when using snow chains. Otherwise, incorrect values may be displayed.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control as needed to optimise propulsion.

Maximum speed with snow chains

When snow chains are fitted, do not exceed 50 km/h, 30 mph.

Tyre Pressure Monitor

Principle

The Tyre Pressure Monitor monitors the tyre pressure and issues a warning if the tyre pressure has dropped.

General

Sensors in the tyre valves measure the tyre inflation pressure and tyre air temperature.

Depending on the tyres detected or entered, the system displays the specified nominal pressures on the control display and compares them to the current tyre inflation pressures.

If the vehicle is fitted with tyres which are not listed in the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle, for example tyres with special approval, the system must be actively reset. The current tyre inflation pressures are then accepted as the nominal pressures.

When operating the system, please also comply with the information and notes in the chapter on tyre inflation pressure.

For further information:

Tyre inflation pressure, see page 326.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The display showing the nominal pressures does not replace the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle. If incorrect data has been entered into the tyre settings, the specified tyre inflation pressures will also be incorrect. As a result, a reliable message regarding a tyre pressure loss can no longer be guaranteed. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Make sure that the sizes of fitted tyres are displayed correctly, and that the sizes match the information given on the tyres and tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the vehicle.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable message of a tyre pressure loss is not ensured:

- After each tyre or wheel change, the system has detected the fitted tyres, updated

the relevant information and, after a short journey, shown it on the control display.

If the system does not detect the tyres automatically, enter the specifications for the fitted tyres in the tyre settings.

- The Tyre Pressure Monitor only becomes active after driving for several minutes:
  - After tyre/wheel change.
  - After a reset, for tyres with special approval.
  - After changing the tyre setting.
- For tyres with special approval:
  - After every tyre or wheel change, the system must be reset once the tyre inflation pressure is correct.
  - A reset must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.
- Wheels with air pressure sensor.

Tyre settings

General

If the system does not detect the tyres automatically, the specifications for the fitted tyres can be entered in the tyre settings.

The tyre sizes of the fitted tyres can be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle or directly on the tyres.

The tyre data does not have to be re-entered if the tyre inflation pressure is being corrected.

For summer and winter tyres, the tyre data last entered for each type is saved. This means that the settings can be selected again after a tyre or wheel change.

Adjusting tyres

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
5. "Tyre settings"
6. "Tyre selection"
7. "Manual"
8. "Tyre type"
9. Select the tyre size that is mounted on the rear axle.

   For tyres with special approval:

   "Other tyres"

   See the Performing a reset section for how to proceed.
10. After selecting the tyre size, select the load status of the vehicle.
11. "Save tyre settings"

The measurement of the current tyre inflation pressure is started. The progress of the measurement is shown.

Status display

Current status

The status of the system, for example whether the system is active, can be shown on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tyre inflation pressure

The current tyre inflation pressure is displayed for each tyre.

The current tyre inflation pressures can vary depending on vehicle operation or outside temperature.

Current tyre air temperature

The current tyre air temperatures are shown depending on the model.

The current tyre air temperatures can change as a result of driving the vehicle or the outside temperature.

Nominal pressure

The nominal pressure for the tyres on the front and rear axle is displayed.

The stated nominal pressure takes account of the temperature influences caused by driving the vehicle and the outside temperature. The appropriate nominal pressure is always displayed irrespective of the weather conditions, tyre air temperatures and driving times.

The displayed nominal pressure may vary and differ from the value stated in the tyre inflation pressure information on the body pillar of the driver's door. The tyre inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed nominal pressures.

The nominal pressure is adjusted immediately if the load state is changed in the tyre settings.

Tyre statuses

General

The status of the system and tyres is indicated by the wheel colour and a message on the control display.

Existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached when the tyre inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases any warnings on the nominal pressures.
- In the case of tyres with special approval: the system is active and bases its warnings on the tyre inflations pressures saved at the last reset.

One to four wheels yellow

There is a flat tyre or major tyre pressure loss in the tyres shown.

Wheels grey

Tyre pressure losses might not be detected.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- The tyre inflation pressure is being measured, after confirmation of the tyre settings.
- For tyres with special approval: a system reset is being performed.

For tyres with special approval: performing a reset

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
5. Make sure that the tyre settings are correct.

   Tyre settings, see page 338.
6. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
7. "Perform reset".
8. Drive off.

The wheels are shown in grey and the tyre inflation pressure is reset.

After driving for several minutes, the set tyre inflation pressures are accepted as the specified tyre inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically during the journey.

If the reset was successful, the wheels are shown in green on the control display and a message is displayed.

You can interrupt your journey at any time. The reset resumes automatically when you continue driving.

Messages: for tyres without special approval

General

When a low tyre pressure is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking performance. Tyres with run-flat capabilities allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with standard tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing driving with these tyres.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Leak detected on the tyre. The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added or there was a natural, even tyre pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.

If the tyre inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There has been a tyre pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a fuel station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tyre pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon indicating which tyre is affected is shown in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tyre or substantial tyre pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

   The icon identifying run-flat tyres is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre sidewall.

   Run-flat tyres, see page 331.
3. Follow the description of what to do when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

   What to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page 342.

Messages: for tyres with special approval

General

When a low tyre pressure is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking performance. Tyres with run-flat capabilities allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with standard tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing driving with these tyres.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset has been performed. The tyre inflation pressure has dropped compared to the last reset. No reset has been performed on the system. System warning is based on the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tyre inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There has been a tyre pressure loss. No reset has been performed on the system. System warning is based on the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a fuel station, check the tyre inflation pres-

sure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.

3. Perform a system reset.

If there is a significant tyre pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon indicating which tyre is affected is shown in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tyre or substantial tyre pressure loss. No reset has been performed on the system. System warning is based on the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

   The icon identifying run-flat tyres is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre sidewall.

   Run-flat tyres, see page 331.
3. Follow the description of what to do when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

   What to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page 342.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

   Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

   For tyres with special approval: if all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been reset. Perform a reset.

   If no tyre damage can be found, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

The use of tyre sealant, for example a flat tyre kit, can damage the air pressure sensor. Replace the air pressure sensor as soon as possible.

Run-flat tyres

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

A run-flat tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering properties. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

⚠ WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can cause heavy trailers to start snaking. There is a risk of accident and material damage. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, 35 mph. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed. Tyre parts can become detached. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Do not continue driving, but instead contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Maximum speed

If a tyre is damaged you can continue driving, but do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing driving with a flat tyre

Observe the following if you continue driving with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.
3. At the next opportunity, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres.

Possible driving distance in the event of a flat tyre

The possible driving distance varies depending on the load and stresses the vehicle is subjected to, for example, speed, road condition and the outside temperature. The driving distance may be shorter but can be increased if a careful driving style is adopted.

With a moderate load and with low stress, the vehicle can be driven for up to 80 km, 50 miles.

Driving properties with damaged tyres

Driving with damaged tyres changes the vehicle's handling characteristics and may lead to situations such as the following:

- The vehicle losing traction more quickly.
- Longer stopping distances.
- Different self-steering properties.

Adapt your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or potholes.

System limits

Temperature

The tyre inflation pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre.

The tyre inflation pressure increases as the tyre air temperature increases, for example while driving or when exposed to sunlight.

The tyre inflation pressure decreases when the tyre air temperature drops.

Due to the given warning thresholds, therefore, this behaviour may cause a warning to be triggered when significant temperature drops occur.

After a temperature-related warning, the nominal pressures are displayed again on the control display after driving a short distance.

Sudden tyre pressure loss

No warning can be given by the system in the event of extreme, sudden tyre damages caused by external factors.

Reset not carried out

Tyres with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset has not been carried out, for example, a flat tyre may be reported even though the tyre pressure is correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and then illuminates continuously. A Check

Control message is shown. Tyre pressure losses may not be detected.

Measure

- A wheel without air pressure sensor is fitted: have the wheels checked if necessary.
- Fault due to systems or devices with the same transmission frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- For tyres with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- If the Tyre Pressure Monitor has failed: have the system checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Flat tyre monitor

Principle

The flat tyre monitor detects a tyre pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tyre pressure has dropped.

General

The system identifies a tyre pressure loss by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels during the journey.

A tyre pressure loss changes the diameter, and with it the rotational speed, of the corresponding wheel. The discrepancy is detected and reported as a flat tyre.

The system does not measure the tyre inflation pressure as such.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable message of a tyre pressure loss is not ensured:

- After a tyre or wheel change, an initialisation was carried out at the correct tyre inflation pressure.
- The system must be initialised after the tyre inflation pressure is adjusted to a new value.

Status display

It is possible to display the current status of the flat tyre monitor, for example to check whether the flat tyre monitor is active.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "FLAT TYRE MONITOR"

The status is displayed.

Initialisation required

An initialisation must be performed in the following situations:

- After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure.
- After tyre/wheel change.

Initialisation

Initialisation saves the set tyre inflation pressures as reference values for subsequent detection of a flat tyre. Initialisation is started by confirming the correct tyre inflation pressures.

Do not initialise the system if driving with snow chains fitted.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "FLAT TYRE MONITOR"
5. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
6. "Perform reset"
7. Drive off.

Initialisation is completed while driving which can be interrupted at any time.

Initialisation resumes automatically when you continue driving.

Messages

General

When a flat tyre is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking performance. Tyres with run-flat capabilities allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with standard tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing driving with these tyres.

Flat tyre message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message is shown on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tyre or substantial tyre pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

   The icon identifying run-flat tyres is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre sidewall.

   Run-flat tyres, see page 331.
3. Follow the description of what to do when the vehicle gets a flat tyre.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

   To do this, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

   If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the flat tyre monitor might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

   If no tyre damage can be found, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tyres

Safety information

WARNING

A run-flat tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering properties. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can cause heavy trailers to start snaking. There is a risk of accident and material damage. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, 35 mph. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed. Tyre parts can become detached. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Do not continue driving, but instead contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Maximum speed

If a tyre is damaged you can continue driving, but do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing driving with a flat tyre

Observe the following if you continue driving with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.
3. At the next opportunity, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres.

   If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the flat tyre monitor might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

Possible driving distance in the event of a flat tyre

The possible driving distance varies depending on the load and stresses the vehicle is subjected to, for example, speed, road condition and the outside temperature. The driving distance may be shorter but can be increased if a careful driving style is adopted.

With a moderate load and with low stress, the vehicle can be driven for up to 80 km, 50 miles.

Driving properties with damaged tyres

Driving with damaged tyres changes the vehicle's handling characteristics and may lead to situations such as the following:

- The vehicle losing traction more quickly.
- Longer stopping distances.
- Different self-steering properties.

Adapt your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or potholes.

System limits

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or could work incorrectly:

- A natural, even tyre pressure loss in all four tyres that occurs over time will not be detected. Therefore check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- No warning can be given in the event of extreme, sudden tyre damages caused by external factors.
- The system has not been initialised.
- When driving on snow-covered or slippery roads.
- Dynamic driving style: drive wheels slipping, high lateral acceleration.
- When driving with snow chains.

Wheel change

General

For run-flat tyres or when using a tyre repair kit, it is not always necessary to change a wheel immediately in the case of tyre pressure loss due to a flat tyre.

If necessary, wheel change tools, such as the vehicle manufacturer's jack, are offered as optional accessories by an authorised Service Partner, or another qualified Service Partner, or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

The jack is only intended for raising the vehicle briefly during a wheel change. Even if the safety measures are complied with, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling over due to the jack slipping. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie underneath the vehicle and do not switch on drive-ready state.

WARNING

Supports such as wooden blocks under the jack can prevent it from achieving its load capacity due to the restricted height. The load capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded, causing the vehicle to tip over. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

WARNING

The jack provided by the vehicle manufacturer is intended for changing a wheel in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tyres. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency spare wheel or a spare wheel in case of a breakdown.

WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example, snow, ice, tiles or similar, the jack may slip. There is a danger of injury. Change the wheel on a level, firm and non-slip surface if possible.

WARNING

The jack is only optimised for raising the vehicle and for use with the jacking points on the vehicle. There is a danger of injury. Do not lift another vehicle or other loads with the jack.

WARNING

If the jack has not been guided into the jacking point provided, the vehicle might be damaged when the jack is extended, or the jack could slip. There is a danger of injury and material damage. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheel arch.

WARNING

A vehicle raised with a jack can fall from the jack if lateral forces are applied. There is a danger of injury and material damage. If the vehicle is raised, do not apply any lateral forces to the vehicle or pull the vehicle with sudden movements. If the wheel is jammed, have it removed by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Jack: the Australian/New Zealand standard AS/NZS 2693

2007 – "Jack" includes the following warning which BMW herewith adopts: "... no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported only by a jack".

The jack supplied with your car should not be used for any purpose other than wheel changing and should never be used in conjunction with a vehicle support stand. Raising the vehicle for the purpose of inspection should only be performed in a controlled workshop environment on a hoist by trained personnel.

The following AS/NZS 2693:2007 warnings are repeated here: the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible. It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

The jack of your BMW is maintenance-free.

Please observe the information marked on the jack.

NOTICE

Using an impact screwdriver to loosen or tighten the locking wheel bolt can damage the bolt. There is a risk of material damage. Only use a wheel bolt wrench to loosen and tighten the locking wheel bolt.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that the vehicle should additionally be protected against rolling away during a wheel change.

On a level surface

Place chocks or other suitable objects in front of and behind the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill gradient, place chocks and other suitable objects, for example, stones, under the wheels of the front and rear axles against the direction of roll.

Locking wheel bolts

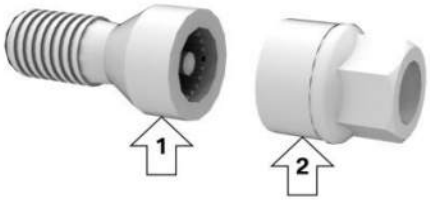
Principle

The locking wheel bolts have a special coding. The bolts can only be released with an adapter that matches the coding.

Overview

Depending on the equipment, storage for the locking wheel bolts adapter, where applicable in a bag, is provided as follows:

- In the luggage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.
- In the luggage compartment on the left or right side.
- In the luggage compartment behind a side trim panel.



- Locking wheel bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Place the adapter on the locking wheel bolt.
2. Unscrew the locking wheel bolt.
3. After unscrewing the wheel bolt, remove the adapter again.

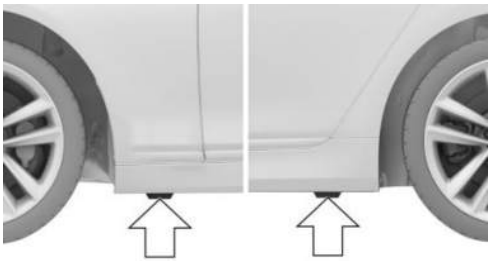
Screwing in

1. Place the adapter on the locking wheel bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the locking wheel bolt.
2. Screw in the locking wheel bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, 101 lb ft.
3. After screwing in the wheel bolt, remove the adapter again and stow it.

Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle on firm and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- Engage a gear or select selector lever position P.
- As soon as the traffic flow permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- If necessary, set up the warning triangle or hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.
- Depending on the equipment, take the wheel change set and, if applicable, the emergency spare wheel out of the vehicle.
- Additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away.
- Undo the wheel bolts by half a turn.

Jacking points



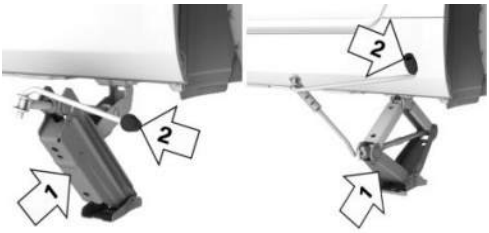
The jacking points are located in the marked positions.

Raising the vehicle

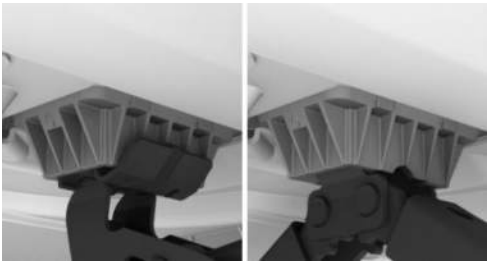
⚠ WARNING

Hands or fingers could get trapped when using the jack. There is a danger of injury. Keep your hands in the described position when using the jack, and do not change this position.

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank handle or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



2. Guide the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



3. Turn the jack crank handle or lever clockwise to extend the jack.

4. Remove your hand from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue to turn the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the jack base is extended vertically and at right angles underneath the jacking point.

6. Raise by cranking until the surface of the jack stands fully on the ground and the wheel in question is a maximum of 3 cm, 1.2 inches off the ground.

Fitting a wheel

No more than one emergency spare wheel may be fitted.

1. Unscrew the wheel bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put on the new wheel or emergency spare wheel and tighten at least two wheel bolts crosswise until finger-tight.

   If installing non-original light alloy wheels not supplied by the manufacturer, the wheel bolts belonging to the wheels may also have to be used.
4. Tighten the remaining wheel bolts until finger-tight and then tighten all the wheel bolts crosswise.
5. Turn the jack crank handle anticlockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After wheel change

1. Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, 101 lb ft.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the luggage compartment, if necessary.

3. Check tyre inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
4. Re-initialise the flat tyre monitor or reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor.
5. Check the tight fit of the wheel bolts using a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the damaged tyre replaced.

Emergency spare wheel

Principle

In case of a flat tyre, the emergency spare wheel can be used as a replacement for the defective tyre. The emergency spare wheel is intended for short-term use until the defective wheel has been replaced.

General

Only fit one emergency spare wheel at most.

Additionally, regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency spare wheel in the luggage compartment and correct the pressure if necessary.

Safety information

WARNING

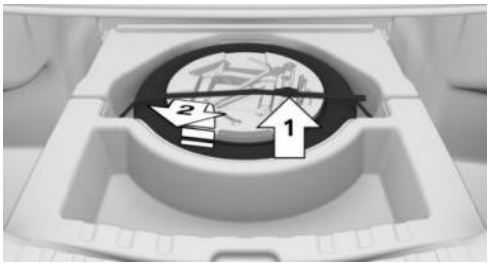
The emergency spare wheel has special dimensions. When driving with an emergency spare wheel, the driving properties may change, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering properties in the limit range. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Overview

The emergency spare wheel and wheel change set for changing wheels are located in the luggage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.

Removing emergency spare wheel

1. Pull the luggage compartment floor up.
2. Loosen the tensioning strap using the hook-and-loop fastener, arrow 1.



3. Detach the hook of the tensioning belts at the lashing eyes.
4. Remove the tool holder from the emergency spare wheel.
5. Remove the emergency spare wheel from the storage tray, arrow 2.

Inserting the emergency spare wheel

1. Pull the luggage compartment floor up.
2. Place the emergency spare wheel in the storage tray.
3. Insert the tool holder.
4. Hook the tensioning straps onto the lashing eyes.
5. Tie the tensioning belt. Make sure that it is fitted correctly and firmly.
6. Press the luggage compartment floor downwards.

Engine compartment

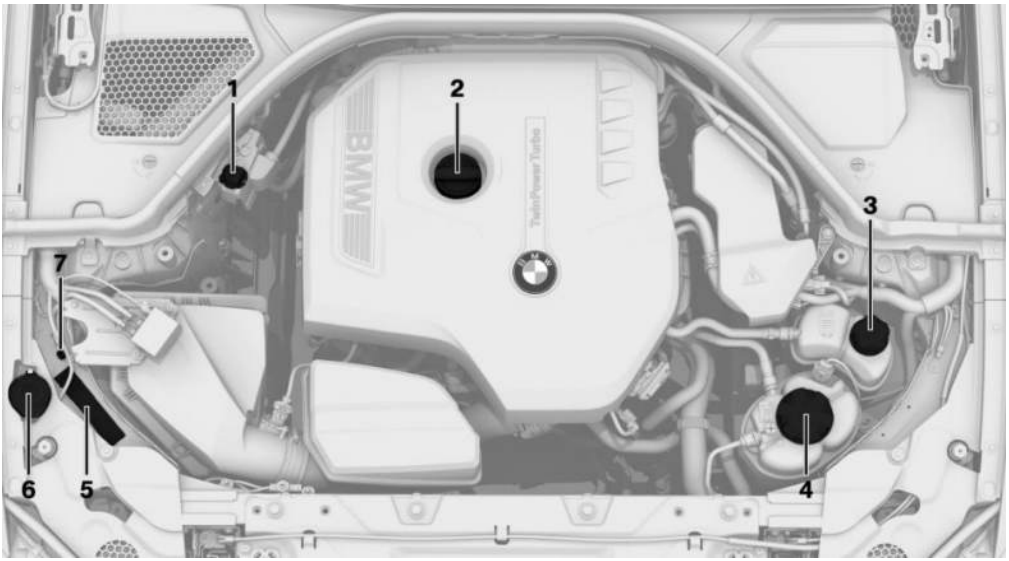
Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Overview



1 Jump start, positive battery terminal

2 Oil filler neck

3 Depending on the motorisation: coolant expansion tank for additional radiator

4 Engine coolant expansion tank

5 Vehicle identification number

6 Filler neck for washer fluid

7 Jump start, negative battery terminal

Bonnet

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrectly performed work in the engine compartment can damage components and poses a safety risk. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having work in the engine compartment carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

The engine compartment contains moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move when the vehicle is switched off, for example the radiator fan. There is a danger of injury. Do not reach into an area where there are moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

WARNING

The bonnet has protruding parts on the inside, for example locking hooks. There is a danger of injury. When the bonnet is open, watch out for protruding parts and keep these areas clear.

WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly locked, it can come open during the journey and impair visibility. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Stop immediately and close the bonnet correctly.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when opening and closing the bonnet. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the movement range of the bonnet is kept clear.

NOTICE

Windscreen wipers which are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the bonnet is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wipers are fitted with wiper blades and are in contact with the windscreen.

NOTICE

When closing, the bonnet must lock into place on both sides. Applying additional pressure can damage the bonnet. There is a risk of material damage. Open the bonnet again and close it firmly. Avoid applying additional pressure.

Opening bonnet

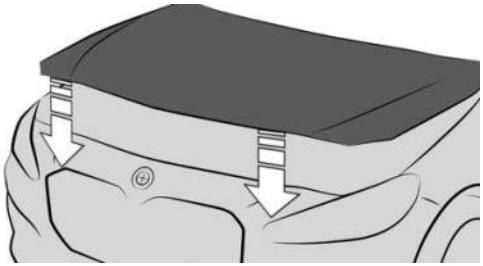
1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.

   The bonnet is unlocked.

An acoustic signal and a message on the instrument cluster indicate that the bonnet is open.

2. Release the lever and pull it again, arrow 2.
   The bonnet can be opened.
3. Watch out for any protruding parts on the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet



Allow the bonnet to drop from a height of approximately 50 cm, approx. 20 in.

The bonnet must engage on both sides.

Operating fluids

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Fuel grade

General

Depending on the region, many fuel stations sell fuel that is adapted to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is sold in winter helps with cold starting, for example.

Petrol

General

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or have a low sulphur content.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

You can fill up with fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, for example E10 or E25.

The power and consumption specifications refer to operation with RON 98 E10 fuel

The engine has knock control. This means that different petrol grades can be used.

When using fuel of the minimum quality RON 91 or fuel with ethanol content of more than 10 % to a maximum of 25 %, knocking noises as well as driving and acoustic abnormalities may occur. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

WARNING

The fuel system and engine can be damaged by the wrong fuel, even in small quantities, and by the wrong fuel additives. In addition, the catalytic converter may be permanently damaged. There is a danger of injury and material damage. For petrol engines, do not refuel with or add the following:

- Leaded petrol.
- Metallic additives, for example manganese or iron.

Do not activate standby state after incorrect refuelling. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTICE

Fuel below the specified minimum grade can adversely affect the engine function or lead to engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with fuel below the specified minimum grade.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with fuel with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuel containing methanol, for example M5 to M100.

Petrol grade

The engine is designed to run on petrol complying with DIN EN 228.

Super, RON 95.

M Performance model:

Super Plus, 98 RON.

Minimum grade

Unleaded petrol, RON 91.

Diesel

General

The following diesel fuels can be used for refuelling:

- Diesel fuels with a maximum biodiesel content of 10 %, e.g. B7 or B10.
- Paraffinic diesel fuels, e.g. XTL.

Safety information

WARNING

The fuel system and engine can be damaged by the wrong fuel, even in small quantities, and by the wrong fuel additives. There is a danger of injury and material damage.

Note the following with diesel engines:

- Do not fill up with petrol.
- Observe the minimum quality.
- Refuel with sulphur-free fuels or fuels with the lowest possible sulphur content.
- The vehicle manufacturer recommends only using diesel additives and additives that have been classified as suitable.

Do not activate standby state after incorrect refuelling. Contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Diesel quality

The engine is designed to run on diesel fuel complying with DIN EN 590 and ASTM D975.

Diesel with up to 7 % biodiesel (B7).

Minimum grade

Diesel with up to 10 % biodiesel (B10).

Paraffinic diesel fuel as per EN 15940.

BMW recommends
Shell Quality Fuels

BMW Diesel with BluePerformance

Principle

BMW Diesel with BluePerformance reduces nitrogen oxides in the diesel exhaust by injecting the reducing agent AdBlue into the exhaust pipe system. In the catalytic converter, this produces a chemical reaction that reduces nitrogen oxides to a minimum.

General

The vehicle has a tank which requires topping up.

There must be a sufficient amount of the reducing agent present in order for drive-ready state to be activated the usual way.

The reducing agent can be topped up at any time.

The reducing agent AdBlue is a registered trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e. V. (VDA).

The reducing agent is available at many fuel stations.

Preferably top up with reducing agent at a pump dispenser.

Displays on the control display

Displaying filling level and top-up quantity

The filling level and the top-up quantity is shown on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6. "AdBlue"

If the filling level is too low, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Fuel reserve indicator light

The fuel reserve indicator light in the instrument cluster notifies you if the reducing agent fill level in the tank is low.

Do not allow the reducing agent tank to run completely empty, as otherwise it will not be possible to switch drive-ready state back on after stopping the engine.

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster: filling level too low. The remaining range is shown in the instrument cluster. Top up with at least 5 litres, 1.3 gal of reducing agent immediately.

AdBlue on the minimum level

The reducing agent tank is empty. Immediately top up with at least 15 litres, 4 gal of reducing agent. The engine will continue to run provided that it is not stopped and all other oper-

ating conditions are met, for example, there is sufficient fuel.

System fault

If there is a system fault, a Check Control message is displayed.

Visit the nearest authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Having AdBlue topped up

BMW recommends having the reducing agent topped up by a Service Partner as part of a regular maintenance schedule.

Under certain circumstances, for example due to particularly dynamic driving style or operating the vehicle with a trailer, it may be necessary to top up more than once between maintenance appointments.

As soon as the fuel reserve indicator light is shown in the instrument cluster, have the reducing agent topped up, to avoid problems activating drive-ready state.

Topping up AdBlue yourself

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

When the reducing agent container is opened, small quantities of ammonia vapours can emerge. Ammonia vapours have a pungent smell and irritate the skin, mucous membranes and eyes. There is a danger of injury. Do not inhale ammonia vapours. Do not allow reducing agent to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow it. Keep children away from reducing agents.

⚠ WARNING

Operating fluids, for example, oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour operating fluids into other bottles. Keep operating fluids out of the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

The constituents of the reducing agent are highly aggressive. There is a risk of material damage. Do not allow reducing agent to come into contact with vehicle surfaces.

Suitable AdBlue

AdBlue complying with ISO 22241-1

At many fuel stations, reducing agent is available at a special pump dispenser. Preferably top up with reducing agent at a pump dispenser.

If no pump dispenser is available, reducing agent can be topped up from a container. Reducing agent is available in various containers. Preferably use the special bottle recommended by BMW. With this bottle and its special adapter, reducing agent can be topped up conveniently.

AdBlue at low temperatures

At outside temperatures below -11 °C/+12 °F, the reducing agent should only be topped up directly before the start of a journey.

Top-up quantity

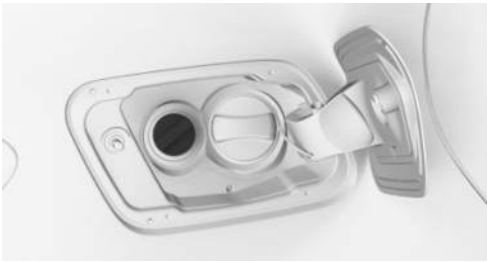
As soon as the fuel reserve indicator light is displayed, top up at least 5 litres, approx. 1.3 gal.

Displaying the top-up quantity

The top-up quantity is shown on control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Vehicle status"
6. "AdBlue"

Reducing agent tank



The fuel filler cap for the reducing agent is located next to the fuel filler cap for the fuel tank.

Topping up with reducing agent at the pump dispenser

General

When topping up, hook the fuel pump nozzle fully into the filler pipe. Lifting the fuel pump nozzle while topping up will cause the following to happen:

- The supply is stopped too soon.
- Overflow of reducing agent.

The reducing agent tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle cuts out for the first time.

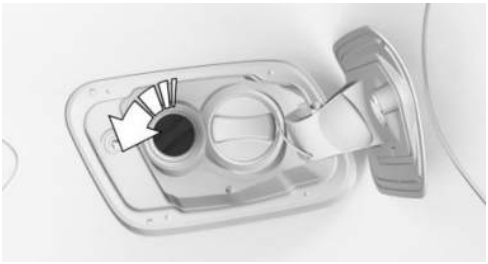
Depending on the fuel pump nozzle, the reducing agent tank may not be filled completely.

Please comply with the safety regulations displayed at fuel stations.

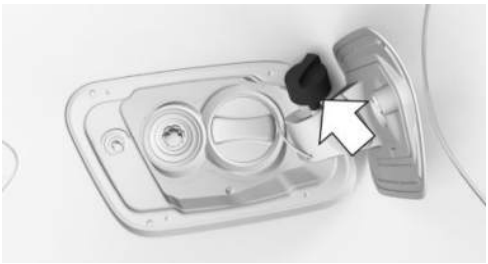
Adding reducing agent

1. Open the fuel filler flap.

   Fuel filler cap, see page 324.
2. Turn the reducing agent cap anticlockwise and remove.

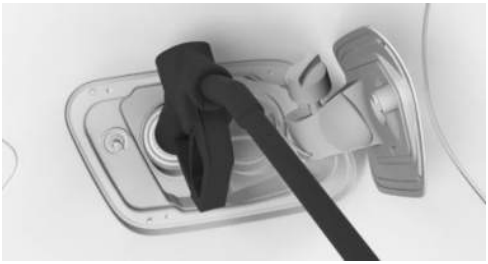


3. Place the fuel filler cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



4. Use the fuel pump nozzle to add the recommended top-up quantity as a minimum.

   The tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle cuts out for the first time.



5. Put fuel filler cap on and turn clockwise.
6. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Filling with an incorrect fluid

General

A Check Control message is displayed if the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid.

If the wrong type of liquid has been added, contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

After filling with an incorrect liquid, the system may heat up and catch fire. There is a risk of fire and injury. Only fill with liquids that are intended for the tank. Do not start the engine after filling with an incorrect liquid.

After filling with reducing agent

Fuel reserve indicator light

After topping up, the fuel reserve indicator light continues to be shown with the remaining range.

Drive-ready state can be activated.

After driving for a short time, the fuel reserve indicator light turns off.

AdBlue on the minimum level

After filling up, the display continues to be shown.

Drive-ready state can only be activated when the display is no longer illuminated.

1. Press the Start/Stop button three times.

   The display extinguishes after approximately 1 minute.
2. Press the Start/Stop button and switch on drive-ready state.

Engine oil

General

The engine oil consumption and the properties of the engine oil depend on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore check the engine oil level regularly each time you fill up with fuel by taking a detailed measurement.

Engine oil consumption may increase due to the following, for example:

- Dynamic driving style.
- While running in the engine.
- Engine idling.
- Use of engine oil grades rated as unsuitable.

Depending on the engine oil level and properties of the engine oil, different Check Control messages are displayed on the control display.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the engine oil changed by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTICE

If the engine oil is not changed at the correct time, engine wear may increase which could cause engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not exceed the service date indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

General

Electronic oil measurement uses two measuring procedures:

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When frequently making short journeys or using a sporty driving style, for example fast cornering, perform a detailed measurement at regular intervals.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically during the journey and can be shown on the control display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

Operating requirements

A current reading is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When frequently making short journeys or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to obtain a measurement. In this case, the measurement for the last, sufficiently long journey is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and is shown on a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

General

During measurement, the idle rotational speed is increased slightly.

Operating requirements

- Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- Drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Engine is at operating temperature.
- Selector lever in position N or P and accelerator pedal not pressed.

Carrying out a detailed measurement

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"

3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"
5. "Oil level measurement"
6. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and shown on a scale.

Topping up engine oil

General

Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is specified in the message on the control display.

Only top up with suitable engine oil grades.

Stop the vehicle safely and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Do not add too much engine oil.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating fluids, for example, oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour operating fluids into other bottles. Keep operating fluids out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is in the engine compartment.

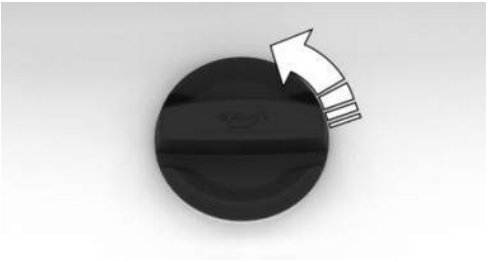
For further information:

Overview, see page 352.

Topping up engine oil

1. Open the bonnet.

   Opening, see page 353.
2. Turn the cap anticlockwise to open.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Tighten cap.

Engine oil grades for topping up

General

Engine oil quality is a critical factor in the service life of the engine.

Only top up with the types of engine oil that are listed.

Some engine oil grades may not be available in all countries.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Using the wrong engine oil can result in engine malfunctions and damage. There is a risk of material damage. When selecting the engine oil, make sure that it is the correct oil specification.

Suitable engine oil grades

Engine oil with the following oil specification can be topped up:

Petrol engine
BMW Longlife-12 FE.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.
BMW Longlife-19 FE.

Vehicles without petrol particulate filter: to top up the engine oil, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using an engine oil with the oil specification BMW Longlife-01 FE instead of engine oil with the oil specification BMW Longlife-12 FE.

Diesel engine
BMW Longlife-12 FE.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil grades

If suitable engine oils are not available, up to 1 litre, approx. 2 pints, of an engine oil with the following oil specification can be used for topping up:

Petrol engine
ACEA C2.
ACEA C5.

Diesel engine
ACEA C2.
ACEA C5.

Viscosity classes

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil belongs to one of the following viscosity classes:

Petrol engine
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

Diesel engine
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

Viscosity classes with a high viscosity grade can increase fuel consumption.

Further information on suitable engine oil specifications and viscosity classes can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General

Coolant is a mixture of water and coolant additive.

Not all commercially available coolant additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix coolant additives of different colours. Comply with the 50:50 mixture ratio of water to coolant additive. Information regarding suitable coolant additives is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

If the cooling system is opened when the engine is hot, coolant can escape and cause scalding. There is a danger of injury. Only open the cooling system when the engine has cooled down.

WARNING

Additives are harmful to health. Incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow them. Only use suitable additives.

NOTICE

Excessive water in the coolant reduces its antifreeze and corrosion protection properties. There is a risk of material damage. Comply with the 50:50 mixture ratio of water to coolant additive.

Coolant level

General

Depending on the type of drivetrain, either one or two coolant expansion tanks are housed in the engine compartment. Check the coolant levels regularly and top up.

When the vehicle is delivered from the factory or after maintenance measures, the coolant may be overfilled in the coolant tank. The specified coolant level is achieved through a longer operating period.

The target coolant level is indicated by means of the max. mark in the coolant filler neck of the coolant tank.

For further information:

Overview, see page 352.

Checking the coolant level

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Switch off the air conditioning system.

   Air conditioning control, see page 275.
3. Open the bonnet.

   Opening, see page 353.
4. Turn cap on coolant expansion tank slightly anticlockwise to allow the excess pressure to escape.
5. Open cap on coolant expansion tank.
6. The coolant level is correct if it is at the level of the maximum mark in the filler neck.

7. Close the cap of the coolant tank.

Topping up the coolant

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Switch off the air conditioning system.
   Air conditioning control, see page 275.
3. Open the bonnet.
   Opening, see page 353.
4. Turn cap on coolant expansion tank slightly anticlockwise to allow the excess pressure to escape.
5. Open cap on coolant expansion tank.
6. If necessary, slowly top up to the correct filling level. Be careful not to spill any coolant.
7. Close the cap of the coolant tank.

Disposal

When disposing of coolant and coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations.

Washer fluid

General

All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and screenwash concentrate for the window washer system, if necessary with the antifreeze additive.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 2 litres/3.5 Imp. pints.

Safety information

WARNING

Some antifreeze additives can contain toxic substances, and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and danger of injury. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze additives away from sources of combustion. Do not pour operating fluids into other bottles. Keep operating fluids out of the reach of children.

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite on contact with hot parts of the engine and catch fire. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down. Afterwards fully close the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicone additives mixed with the washer fluid for their water beading effect on the windows may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add silicone additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different screenwash concentrates or antifreeze additives may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not mix different screenwash concentrates or antifreeze additives. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.

Overview

The reservoir for the washer fluid is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

Using undiluted screenwash concentrate or antifreeze additive based on alcohol may result in false readings at low temperatures below -15 °C, +5 °F.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Maintenance system

Principle

The maintenance system indicates what maintenance measures are required and thereby assists in maintaining the road safety and operational safety of the vehicle.

General

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the scope and intervals of the maintenance system may vary. Labour, spare parts, operating materials and wear materials are charged separately. Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance requirement using sensors and special algorithms which monitor the conditions in which the vehicle is used.

This system therefore allows maintenance measures to be adapted to the individual usage profile.

General

Service notifications can be displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Service notifications, see page 167.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on maintenance requirement is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The authorised Service Partner can read out this data and suggest appropriate maintenance measures for the vehicle.

Give the service advisor the vehicle key that was last used to drive the vehicle.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods when the vehicle is out of use with its vehicle battery disconnected are taken into account.

Have any time-dependent maintenance measures, for example, changing operating fluids, performed by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or specialist workshop.

Service history

Principle

The service history is an electronic overview of all service appointments and replaces the printed Service Booklet. The entries in the service history serve as proof of regular servicing. The maintenance work carried out is entered in the maintenance records and the vehicle data.

Maintenance and repairs

Have maintenance and repairs carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Entries

When an entry is made in the vehicle's service history, the service-relevant data is saved both in the vehicle and in the central IT systems of BMW AG, Munich.

After a change of registered keeper, the new owner will be able to view the data entered in the service history. Similarly, an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can also view the data entered in the electronic service history.

Objection

The registered keeper is entitled to contact an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop and request that no entries are made in the service history and that no data relating to their time as owner is subsequently stored in the vehicle or transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. In such cases, no entries will be made in the vehicle's service history.

Displays

Service work which has been logged can be displayed on the control display.

For further information:

Service notifications, see page 167.

For Australia: maintenance

No maintenance measures other than normal maintenance is required to keep the emission levels of your vehicle within the design limits.

Socket for on-board diagnosis

General

Devices connected to the on-board diagnostic socket trigger the alarm system after locking the vehicle.

Remove devices connected to the on-board diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle.

For further information:

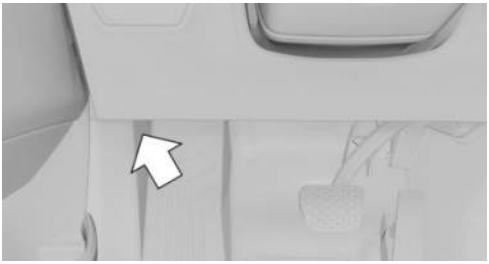
Indicator and warning lights, see page 150.

Safety information

NOTICE

Incorrect use of the on-board diagnostic socket can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Service and maintenance work involving the on-board diagnostic socket must be carried out by an authorised Service Partner, or another qualified Service Partner, or a specialist workshop, or other authorised persons. Only connect devices that have been tested and found to be safe for use with the socket for on-board diagnosis.

Overview



There is an on-board diagnostic socket on the driver's side for reading out vehicle data.

Exhaust emissions

- When the warning light flashes:
  There is an engine fault which could damage the catalytic converter.
  Have the vehicle checked immediately.
- When warning light illuminates:
  deterioration of the exhaust gas quality.
  Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Recycling vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends returning the vehicle to a collection point nominated by the manufacturer at the end of its life cycle. The relevant national legal provisions apply to returns and recycling in general. Information on recycling and sustainability can be found on the manufacturer's country-specific websites. Further information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Laying up the vehicle

Special measures need to be taken if putting the vehicle out of use for longer than three months. Additional information is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Deep sleep mode, see page 49.

Replacing parts

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Toolkit

The toolkit is located under a cover in the left storage compartment of the luggage compartment.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The windscreen may sustain damage if a windscreen wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade fitted. There is a risk of material damage. Hold the windscreen wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the windscreen wiper without a wiper blade installed.

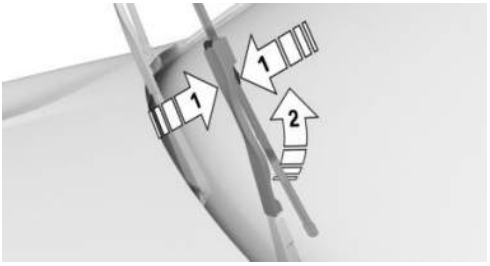
NOTICE

Windscreen wipers which are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the bonnet is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wipers are fitted with wiper blades and are in contact with the windscreen.

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To replace the wiper blades, move the wipers to the fold-out position.

   For fold-out position of the windscreen wipers, see page 180.
2. Fold out the wiper arm and hold firm.
3. Press together securing spring, arrow 1, and fold out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Remove the wiper blade forwards out of its catch.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in the opposite sequence ensuring that it clips into place.
6. Fold in the windscreen wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General

Lights and bulbs are an important aspect of driving safety.

All headlights and other lights use at least LED technology.

In the event of a malfunction, the vehicle manufacturer recommends having the relevant work carried out by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

Intense brightness can irritate or harm the retina of the eye. There is a danger of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove covers from LEDs.

Headlight glass

During cool or humid weather, the headlight glass can mist over on the inside. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight glass.

If moisture increases, for example if there are water droplets in the lamp despite the headlights being switched on, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free.

More information regarding the vehicle battery can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that could be live.

WARNING

Vehicle batteries that are classified as unsuitable may damage systems or result in functions no longer being carried out. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Only use vehicle batteries that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer. Information regarding suitable vehicle batteries is available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Registering the vehicle battery with the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop register the vehicle battery with the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort functions will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages relating to the comfort functions will no longer be displayed.

Hazard icons

The following hazard icons can be found on the vehicle battery:

Icon	Meaning
	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks.
	Wear protective goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of acid burns: wear gloves, do not tilt the battery.
	Rinse any splashes of acid with water immediately. If acid comes into contact with eyes or is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.
	No direct sunlight, no frost.
	Follow the operating instructions.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not seal any openings on the battery.

Replacing the vehicle battery

General

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends only having the vehicle battery replaced by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If the battery is not replaced properly, the vehicle may not recognise it properly and perfect functioning cannot be guaranteed.

Notes on removal

Observe the following notes on removing the vehicle battery:

- Park the vehicle and switch off electrical loads.
- First disconnect the power at the negative terminal. Then disconnect the power at the positive terminal.

Notes on installation

Observe the following notes on installing the vehicle battery:

- Remove any foreign bodies from the battery holder.
- Only install the battery in the intended position in the vehicle.
- Keep the battery and vehicle connection contacts clean.
- First connect the power at the positive terminal. Then connect the power at the negative terminal.
- Use the connections, connectors and covers provided.
- Connect a hose to the gas outlet opening if necessary.

Starting up the vehicle battery

The vehicle battery is operational. No special precautions are required for start-up.

Charging the vehicle battery

General

To ensure the full service life of the vehicle battery, keep the vehicle battery sufficiently charged.

Charge the vehicle battery in the following situations:

- If the inspection glass on the top of the vehicle battery is black.
- If there is not enough power to start the vehicle.

The following conditions can have a negative effect on the performance of the vehicle battery:

- Frequently driving short distances.
- If the vehicle is not used for a period of one month or longer.

Safety information

WARNING

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12V electrical system. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Battery charger

Battery chargers developed especially for the vehicle and suitable for the electrical system can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Charging the vehicle battery

Only charge the vehicle battery via the jump start terminal points in the engine compartment and with the engine switched off.

With mild hybrid technology: only charge the vehicle battery when the bonnet is open.

For further information:

Jump start terminals, see page 381.

Open circuit

Following a power failure, some equipment will have to be reinitialised or individual settings will need to be updated, for example:

- Parking brake, see page 143.
- With memory function: save positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialise system.

Deep sleep mode

Use deep sleep mode for long stationary periods.

For further information:

Deep sleep mode, see page 49.

Storing the vehicle battery

Observe the following information on storing vehicle batteries:

- Store the vehicle battery in a cool and dry place.
- Protect the vehicle battery from direct sunlight and frost.
- Only clean the vehicle battery with a damp, anti-static cloth.
- Store the vehicle battery upright and secure it against falling over.
- Install the oldest vehicle battery first.
- Do not remove the protective caps from the contacts.
- Charge or install the vehicle battery by the date on the battery label at the latest. After being fully charged, the battery will function for another 10 months.

Mild hybrid technology

Principle

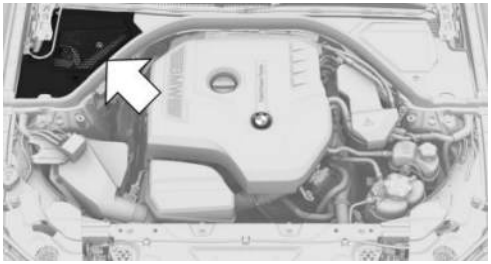
The vehicle's mild hybrid technology includes a 48 volt battery. Mild hybrid technology can reduce fuel consumption.

Safety information

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that could be live.

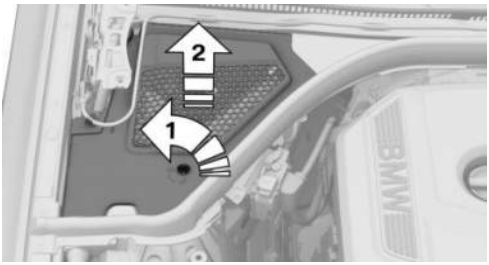
Overview



The mild hybrid technology battery is located in the engine compartment, under a cover on the passenger's side.

Removing the cover

1. Turn the cap to the open padlock icon , arrow 1.



2. Remove cover, arrow 2.

Notice

Do not replace or work on the mild hybrid technology battery.

Disposing of the old battery

Dispose of old batteries with an authorised Service Partner, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, or hand them in to an authorised collection point.

Transport filled vehicle batteries in an upright position. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit.

Batteries contain harmful substances. It is prohibited by law to dispose of them together with household waste.

Warranty

See the vehicle purchase contract for information on the vehicle battery warranty.

Fuses

General

The fuses are located at different positions in the vehicle.

Information on fuse assignment, as well as the positions of the fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: fusecard.bmw.com.

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect or repaired fuses can overload electrical cables and components. There is a danger of fire, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not repair blown fuses or replace them with fuses with a different colour or amp rating.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having fuses changed by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Help in case of a breakdown

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

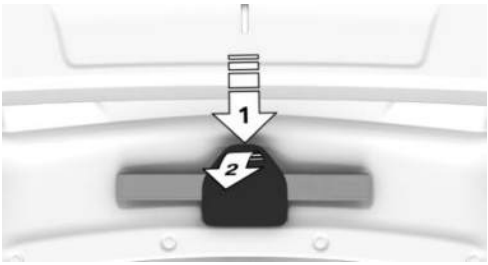
Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Hazard warning lights

Hazard warning lights button

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning lights are turned on.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is housed on the inside of the boot lid.

Press the unlocking mechanism, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

First-aid kit

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the vehicle may have a first-aid kit.

Some items in the kit have a limited life.

Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time.

Storage

The first-aid kit is to be stored in the right-hand storage compartment in the luggage compartment.

BMW Assistance

Principle

In the event of a breakdown or accident, or for questions about the vehicle, BMW Assistance can be used to contact the BMW Group customer support.

General

This feature depends on the vehicle equipment and national-market version.

For more information on this service, the vehicle manufacturer recommends contacting an authorised Service Partner or the hotline/customer support.

Starting service

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. Select the BMW Assistance entry.

Voice contact to customer support is established.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Principle

The Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group can be contacted if assistance is required in the event of a breakdown.

General

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW Roadside Assistance.

It is possible that malfunctions can be remedied directly.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance:

- Via supplementary text messages in the Check Control message.
- By calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the My BMW App.

Depending on the national-market version and vehicle type, a different roadside assistance provider may be assigned on the BMW website. To do this, log in to the personal area with the BMW ID.

Operating requirements

To use BMW Roadside Assistance, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Mobile reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance manually

When equipped with Teleservices, support is provided first through Teleservice Diagnosis and then by Teleservice help if required.

BMW Roadside Assistance can be started manually as follows:

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. "BMW Roadside Assistance" or select the desired service.

   Follow the displays on the control display. If necessary, a voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnostics enables detailed vehicle data, which is necessary for vehicle diagnosis, to be transmitted via mobile communication. This data is transferred automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice help

Teleservice Assistance is a country-specific feature that allows BMW Roadside Assistance to carry out a more in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle via mobile radio.

Teleservice Assistance can be started after a request by BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Switch on the control display.
4. Consent to Teleservice help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

The BMW Group's Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is required in the event of an accident.

General

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident that did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. A corresponding text message also appears on the control display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is transferred to BMW.

Depending on the national-market version and vehicle type, a different accident assistance provider may be assigned on the BMW website. To do this, log in to the personal area with the BMW ID.

Operating requirements

To use BMW Roadside Assistance, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Mobile reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A BMW Accident Assistance text message is shown on the control display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

For a short time, the Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be retrieved from the saved Check Control messages.

For further information:

Check Control, see page 149.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

BMW Accident Assistance can be started manually as follows:

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance" or select the desired service.

   Follow the displays on the control display. A voice contact is established.

Emergency call

Principle

The system can be used to trigger an emergency call automatically or manually in emergency situations.

Legal emergency call

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle may be equipped with a legally required emergency call system.

The legal emergency call establishes a connection to a public emergency call number.

The public emergency call number depends on factors such as the specific mobile communications network and national regulations, among others.

The legal emergency call is placed using the integrated SIM card in the vehicle and cannot be switched off.

When a legal emergency call is made, data is sent to the public emergency response centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required, for example, the position of the vehicle, if this can be determined.

Even if the vehicle occupants can no longer hear the rescue coordination centre through the loudspeakers, the rescue coordination centre can still hear the vehicle occupants speak.

The rescue coordination centre ends the emergency call.

For information on data transfer and storage:

Statutory emergency call system, see page 16.

Intelligent emergency call

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may have an intelligent emergency call system.

The intelligent emergency call system establishes a connection with the BMW emergency call centre.

If no emergency call is possible through BMW, an emergency call will be made to a public emergency call number. This depends on factors such as the specific mobile phone network and national regulations, among others.

The intelligent emergency call is set up using the integrated SIM card in the vehicle.

When an intelligent emergency call is made, data such as the vehicle's position, if this can be determined, is sent to the BMW emergency call centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required.

If the questions asked by the BMW emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are implemented automatically.

Even if the vehicle occupants can no longer hear the BMW emergency call centre through the loudspeakers, the BMW emergency call centre may still be able to hear the vehicle occupants.

The emergency call is ended by the BMW emergency call centre.

General

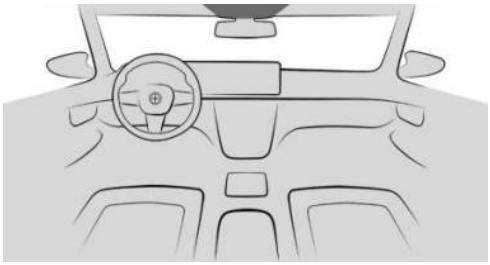
Depending on the equipment and national-market version, both emergency call systems may be available in the vehicle. In this case, the vehicle first tries to trigger the intelligent

emergency call. If the intelligent emergency call cannot be triggered, the legal emergency call is triggered.

Press the SOS button in the headliner only in an emergency.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview



The SOS button is located in the headliner.

Operating requirements

The following functional requirements apply to the emergency call:

- Standby state is switched on.
- The emergency call system is operational.
- The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, e.g. if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is triggered automatically immediately after an accident of appropriate severity. Pressing the SOS button does not affect the automatic emergency call.

If an emergency call is triggered, other signal tones and audio sources are set to mute, for example Park Distance Control.

Manual triggering

To trigger an emergency call manually, proceed as follows:

1. Tap the cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button in the headliner until the LED in the button area is illuminated green.

- The LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.

  If a cancellation request is shown on the control display, the emergency call can be cancelled.

  If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.
- The LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency call has been established.

Malfunction

The emergency call function may be impaired.

The LED in the area of the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is shown.

The emergency call may be disrupted by the following circumstances, among others:

- A longer stationary period for the vehicle.
- Intense sunlight on the vehicle roof.

Have it checked by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Fire extinguisher

Principle

The fire extinguisher can be used to put out vehicle fires.

General

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version, the vehicle may have a fire extinguisher.

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect use of the fire extinguisher can cause injury. There is a danger of injury. Observe the information below when using the fire extinguisher:

- Do not inhale the extinguishing agent. If the extinguishing agent has been inhaled, move the affected person into fresh air. If the casualty experiences breathing difficulties, contact a doctor immediately.
- Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the skin. Prolonged contact with the extinguishing agent can cause the skin to dry out.
- Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the eyes. In the event of contact with the eyes, rinse them immediately with plenty of water. In case of prolonged discomfort, contact a doctor.

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Ensure that items in the vehicle are stowed securely and cannot get into the driver's footwell.

Overview

The fire extinguisher is located in the interior, for example under the seat or in the glove compartment.

Removing the fire extinguisher

To remove the fire extinguisher, open the turnbuckles on the retaining strap.

Using the fire extinguisher

To use the fire extinguisher, follow the manufacturer's instructions on the fire extinguisher and the information supplied with it.

Stowing the fire extinguisher

To stow the fire extinguisher, proceed as follows:

1. Insert the fire extinguisher into the holder.
2. Hook in and close the turnbuckles.

Maintenance and refilling

Have the fire extinguisher checked every 2 years by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Make a note of the next maintenance date for the fire extinguisher.

Replace the fire extinguisher after use or have it refilled.

Jump start

General

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the combustion engine can be started from another vehicle's battery using two jump leads. Only use jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.

Safety information

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that could be live.

WARNING

Connecting the jump lead in the wrong sequence can cause sparks. There is a danger of injury. Please comply with the correct sequence when connecting.

WARNING

Contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles when jump-starting can cause a short circuit. There is a danger of injury and material damage. Make sure there is no contact between vehicle bodies.

Preparations

1. Check whether the battery in the other vehicle shows 12V voltage. Information about the voltage is provided on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the donor vehicle.
3. Switch off any power consumers in both vehicles.

Jump start terminals

The jump start connections are located in the engine compartment.

For further information:

Overview, see page 352.

Open the lid of the starting aid terminals.

Connecting the jump leads

Before starting, switch off all unnecessary power consumers, for example the radio, on both vehicles.

1. Open the cover of the jump start terminal.
2. Connect a terminal clamp of the positive/+ jump lead to the positive battery terminal or the corresponding jump start terminal on the donor vehicle.
3. Connect the second terminal clamp to the positive battery terminal or to the corresponding jump start terminal on the vehicle being started.
4. Connect a terminal clamp of the negative/– jump lead to the negative battery terminal or the corresponding engine or body ground on the donor vehicle.
5. Connect the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal or to a corresponding engine or body ground on the vehicle being started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray products to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly higher idle speed.

   If starting a vehicle with diesel engine: allow the engine of the donor vehicle to run for approximately 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle to be started in the usual way.

   If an initial start attempt fails, wait a few minutes before trying again to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Allow both engines to run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jump leads in reverse order to connection.

Check the battery and have it recharged if necessary.

Tow-starting/towing away

Safety information

WARNING

When tow-starting or towing away with activated safety systems or driver assistance systems, the behaviour of individual systems can lead to an accident, for example, due to automatic braking or acceleration. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Do not use the corresponding safety systems or driver assistance systems when tow-starting or towing away.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from a danger area, it can be pushed over a distance of approx. 100 m, approx. 328 ft at a maximum speed of 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph.

For further information:

For rolling or pushing the vehicle, see page 136.

Transporting the vehicle

General

The vehicle may only be transported on a loading platform or a towing dolly.

Have vehicle transport performed only by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

NOTICE

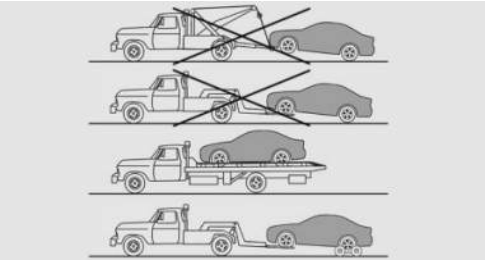
If the vehicle is towed away with one axle raised, the vehicle can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Have the vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a towing dolly. Use a towing dolly only under the rear wheels and make sure that no wheel is touching the ground.

WARNING

The vehicle may be damaged when raising and securing it. There is a danger of injury and material damage.

- Use only suitable equipment to raise the vehicle.
- Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing eye, wheel rims, body parts or suspension components.
- For transport, secure the vehicle with special tyre tensioning belts over the tyre tread surfaces in the longitudinal direction of the vehicle.

Recovery vehicle



Have the vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a towing dolly.

If a towing dolly is used, make sure that none of the wheels touch the ground. This method may be used for a maximum distance of 124 miles, 200 km. Observe the notes, loads and speeds specified by the towing dolly manufacturer.

Towing other vehicles

Principle

Switch on the hazard warning lights in line with local regulations.

If the electrical system of the vehicle being towed has failed, the vehicle must be made identifiable to other road users, for example by placing a sign or the warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the permitted total weight of the towing vehicle is less than that of the vehicle being towed, the towing eye may be torn off or it may not be possible to control the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Make sure that the total weight of the towing vehicle is greater than the weight of the vehicle being towed.

NOTICE

If the towbar or the towing rope is not attached correctly, other vehicle parts can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Attach the towbar or towing rope to the towing eye correctly.

Towbar

The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

If it is impossible to avoid attaching the towbar at an angle, note the following:

- Clearance may be restricted when cornering.
- Lateral force will be generated if the towbar is installed at an angle.

Towing rope

Note the following if using a towing rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps that will allow the vehicle to be towed smoothly.
- Fasten the towing rope so it is not twisted.
- Check the towing eye and towing rope fastening regularly.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 50 km/h, 30 mph.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 5 km, 3 miles.
- Ensure that the towing rope is taut when the towing vehicle drives off.

Towing eye

Principle

The towing eye is a device that can be screwed in on the vehicle in order to securely attach towing ropes or towbars, for example.

General

Always keep the screw-on towing eye in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, the vehicle or towing eye may be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the notes on using the towing eye.

Storage

Depending on the equipment, storage for the towing eye, where applicable in a bag, is provided as follows:

- In the luggage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.
- In the luggage compartment on the left or right side.
- In the luggage compartment behind a side trim panel.

Using the towing eye

The following instructions must be observed when using the towing eye:

- Only use the towing eye supplied with the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in tight and as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.
- After use, unscrew the towing eye in an anti-clockwise direction.
- Only use the towing eye for towing on paved roads.
- Avoid transverse loads on the towing eye, for example do not raise the vehicle by the towing eye.
- Check the towing eye mounting regularly.

Thread for towing eye

The thread for the towing eye is located behind a cover on the front and rear bumpers.

Press the marking on the edge of the cover to press it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not attempt to tow-start the vehicle.

If necessary, start the engine using the jump start.

Have the cause of the starting problems rectified by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information:

Jump start, see page 380.

Care

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Vehicle wash

General

Regularly remove foreign objects, for example, leaves or snow, in the area below the windscreen.

Wash the vehicle frequently, especially in winter. Heavy soiling and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.

For further information:

For fold-out position of the windscreen wipers, see page 180.

Safety information

NOTICE

Damages may occur if the fuel filler flap is open while washing. There is a risk of material damage. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Remove any dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

High-pressure cleaners

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, excessive pressure, excessive temperatures or an insufficient distance can damage various components. There is a risk of material damage. Maintain a sufficient distance and do not spray for an extended period of time. Comply with the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 60 °C, 140 °F.
- Minimum distance to sensors, cameras, seals, and lights: 30 cm, approx. 12 in.
- Minimum distance to the glass sunroof: 80 cm, 31.5 in.

Automatic car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged if automatic car washes are used incorrectly. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the following notes:

- Textile car washes or systems using soft brushes are preferable, to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- Observe the appropriate vehicle dimensions for the conveyor car wash or car wash.

- Do not drive into delete car washes or washing bays with guide rails higher than 10 cm, 4 in, to avoid damage to the body.
- Note the maximum tyre width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tyres and rims.
- Fold in the exterior mirrors to avoid damaging them.
- Deactivate the windscreen wipers and the rain sensor (if fitted) to avoid damage to the wiper system.
- Remove any removable add-on parts, for example, aerials.

Entering a car wash

NOTICE

The selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are locked. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state if the vehicle is to roll, e.g. in conveyor car washes.

The vehicle must be able to roll freely while in the conveyor car wash.

Some conveyor car washes require you to leave the vehicle. It is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside in selector lever position N. If an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, a signal sounds.

For further information:

For rolling or pushing the vehicle, see page 136.

Exiting from a conveyor car wash

Make sure that the vehicle key is in the vehicle.

Switch on drive-ready state.

For further information:

Drive-ready state, see page 50.

Lights

Do not rub wet lights dry, and do not use abrasive, alcohol-based, or corrosive cleaning agents.

Soak impurities, for example insect residues, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Remove ice with a de-icer spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After vehicle wash

After the vehicle wash, apply the brakes to dry them, otherwise the braking effect may be temporarily reduced. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove residues on the windscreens to avoid affecting visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiping noise and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Care products

General

The manufacturer recommends using care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or pose a health risk. There is a danger of injury and material damage. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning the respective component. Observe the notes on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General

Regular care promotes driving safety and preserves your vehicle's value. Environmental effects in areas with high air pollution or natural contaminants, for example tree resin or pollen, may affect the vehicle paintwork. Take such factors into consideration when deciding on the frequency and scope of vehicle care measures.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, or bird droppings, to prevent the paintwork from being damaged and discoloured.

Matt paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with matt paintwork.

Film wraps

Only use cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with film wraps.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather at regular intervals with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, resulting in considerable abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

To protect against discolouration, for example from clothing, clean and care for the leather approximately every two months.

Clean light-coloured leather more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster.

Use leather cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the leather.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, such as sunscreen, to prevent the leather from being altered or discoloured.

Synthetic leather care

Clean the synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfibre cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, resulting in considerable abrasion and causing the surface to become prematurely brittle.

In case of major contaminations, use a moist soft sponge or microfibre cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, such as sunscreen, to prevent the synthetic leather from being altered or discoloured.

Fabric care

General

In case of major contaminations, such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfibre cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, such as sunscreen, to prevent the fabric from being altered or discoloured.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners, zip fasteners or applications, for example, rivets, on clothing can damage the seat covers and other fabric and leather covers in the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure that fasteners are closed.

Care of upholstery fabrics

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing vigorously.

Textile care

Use a microfibre cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.

Alcantara

Use a microfibre cloth moistened with water for cleaning minor contamination. Avoid rubbing vigorously.

Care of special parts

Displays, operating elements and protective glass of the head-up display

NOTICE

The surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g. with chemical cleaners, moisture or liquids of all kinds. There is a risk of material damage.

- Avoid applying excessive pressure and do not use abrasive materials.
- Use a dry, clean anti-static microfibre cloth for cleaning displays.
- Clean the operating elements and, depending on the equipment, clean the protective glass of the head-up display using a damp microfibre cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

Light alloy wheels

When cleaning the wheels while they are installed on the vehicle, only use neutral rim cleaner with a pH value between 5 and 9. Do not use abrasive cleaners or high-pressure cleaners above 60 °C, 140 °F. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can damage the surface of the wheel rims and the protective layer of adjacent components, for example, the brakes.

After cleaning, apply the brakes to dry them. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome-like surfaces

Carefully clean chrome-like surfaces with plenty of water and a shampoo additive if necessary, for example, after exposure to road salt.

Rubber parts

The surfaces of rubber parts can be contaminated or lose their shine due to environmental influences. Only use water and suitable care products for cleaning.

Rubber parts subjected to high wear and tear should be treated regularly with rubber care products. Do not use silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, otherwise these could be damaged and become a source of noise.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the window washer system.

Avoid additional manual cleaning of the wiper blades to prevent a reduction in wipe quality.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trim and fine wood parts with a damp cloth. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic parts

NOTICE

Cleaning agents containing alcohol or solvents, for example nitro thinners, cold cleaners, fuel or similar can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of material damage. Clean with a microfibre cloth. Lightly moisten the cloth with water if necessary.

When cleaning plastic parts, ensure that textile components, for example, the headliner, are not soaked through.

Carbon parts

For easy cleaning of carbon parts, remove everyday soiling with a microfibre cloth, water and silicone-free cleaner.

Harsh, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can alter the surface.

If necessary, have the carbon parts disassembled by an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Seat belts

⚠ WARNING

Chemical cleaners can destroy the fabric of the seat belts, causing the seat belts to become ineffective and unable to protect occupants. There is a danger of injury or danger to life. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirt on the seat belt straps can interfere with the action of the reel and is a safety hazard.

Only clean the seat belt straps with a mild soap solution while still fitted to the vehicle.

Do not allow seat belts to retract until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident, danger of injury and danger of material damage. Ensure that items in the vehicle are stowed securely and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after removal, for example for cleaning.

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly.

In the event of heavy soiling, clean floor carpets using a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. Rub back and forth in the direction of travel to prevent matting.

Sensors and camera lenses

Clean sensors or camera lenses using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

General

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Handbook are reference figures. Data relating to a specific vehicle can deviate from this, for example, due to selected optional equipment, national-market versions or country-specific measurement procedures. Detailed values can be found in the permit documents, on signs on the vehicle or can be requested from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The information in the vehicle documents always takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Handbook.

Payload

The payload stated in the Owner's Handbook refers to a vehicle without a driver with standard equipment and does not take into account any optional equipment. Optional equipment can change the actual weight of the vehicle and generally increases it. This also changes the payload and generally reduces it. The actual payload depends on the actual weight and the technically permissible gross weight and must be determined on a vehicle-by-vehicle basis.

Kerb weight

The kerb weight refers to a ready-to-drive vehicle with a load of 75 kg, approx. 165 lbs, a fuel tank that is 90 % full and no optional equipment.

Dimensions

Dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment specification or country-specific measurement method.

In addition, the height of the vehicle may vary, for example, due to tyres and load.

Model code

The vehicle's model code is contained within the vehicle identification number at positions 4 to 7 from the left.

Trailer load and attachment points

Trailer loads according to EU operating licence. Consult an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

The specifications for the attachment points refer to the vehicle's zero point. The overhang specification refers to the rear axle. Further information can be obtained from an authorised Service Partner or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Technical data in detail

BMW 3 Series Saloon Dimensions		
Width with mirrors	in	81.4
	mm	2068
Width without mirrors	in	71.9
	mm	1827
Height	in	56.9
	mm	1445
Length	in	185.6
	mm	4714
Wheelbase	in	112.2
	mm	2851
Turning radius Ø	ft	39.4
	m	12.0
Fuel tank, approx.	gal	13.0
	litres	59
Larger fuel tank, approx.	gal	13.0
	litres	59

BMW 318d Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3660
	kg	1660
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1257
	kg	570
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4685
	kg	2125
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2161

BMW 318d Saloon Weights		
	kg	980
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2690
	kg	1220
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 318d Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2943
	kg	1335
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4850
	kg	2200

BMW 318i Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3472
	kg	1575
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224

BMW 318i Saloon Weights		
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4530
	kg	2055
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2127
	kg	965
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2579
	kg	1170
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 318i Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	2866
	kg	1300
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	2866
	kg	1300
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2833
	kg	1285
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4696
	kg	2130

BMW 320d Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3682
	kg	1670
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1257
	kg	570
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4718
	kg	2140
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2161
	kg	980
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2690
	kg	1220
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 320d Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2943
	kg	1335

BMW 320d Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4883
	kg	2215

BMW 320d xDrive Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3825
	kg	1735
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1257
	kg	570
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4850
	kg	2200
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2293
	kg	1040
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2712
	kg	1230
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 320d xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 320d xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2965
	kg	1345
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	5016
	kg	2275

BMW 320i Saloon Valid for model code: 30FV, 5X11, 5Z90, 71FS. Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3505
	kg	1590
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4564
	kg	2070
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2127
	kg	965
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2579
	kg	1170
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 320i Saloon Valid for model code: 51FS, 58FS, 5F51. Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3505
	kg	1590

BMW 320i Saloon Valid for model code: 51FS, 58FS, 5F51. Weights		
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4564
	kg	2070
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2127
	kg	965
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2579
	kg	1170
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 320i Saloon Valid for model code: 18BV, 24FF, 35FV, 36FV, 38FV, 48FV, 50FF, 51FF, 52FF, 58FF, 5F30, 5F31, 5F32, 5F38, 5Y54, 5Z10, 5Z15, 5Z16, 5Z18. Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3505
	kg	1590
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4564
	kg	2070
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2127
	kg	965
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2579
	kg	1170
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 320i Saloon Valid for model code: 30FV, 5X11, 5Z90, 71FS. Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2833
	kg	1285
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4729
	kg	2145

BMW 320i Saloon Valid for model code: 51FS, 58FS, 5F51. Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55

BMW 320i Saloon Valid for model code: 51FS, 58FS, 5F51. Trailer operation		
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2833
	kg	1285
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4729
	kg	2145

BMW 320i Saloon Valid for model code: 18BV, 24FF, 35FV, 36FV, 38FV, 48FV, 50FF, 51FF, 52FF, 58FF, 5F30, 5F31, 5F32, 5F38, 5Y54, 5Z10, 5Z15, 5Z16, 5Z18. Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2833
	kg	1285
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4729
	kg	2145

BMW 320i xDrive Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3649
	kg	1655
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4707
	kg	2135
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2282
	kg	1035
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2612
	kg	1185
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 320i xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2866
	kg	1300

BMW 320i xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4872
	kg	2210

BMW 330d Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3935
	kg	1785
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4993
	kg	2265
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2392
	kg	1085
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2745
	kg	1245
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 330d Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 330d Saloon Trailer operation		
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2998
	kg	1360
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	5159
	kg	2340

BMW 330d xDrive Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	4045
	kg	1835
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	5104
	kg	2315
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2491
	kg	1130
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2756
	kg	1250
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 330d xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800

BMW 330d xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	3009
	kg	1365
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	5269
	kg	2390

BMW 330i Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4586
	kg	2080
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2161
	kg	980
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2579
	kg	1170
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 330i Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3527
	kg	1600
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2833
	kg	1285
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4751
	kg	2155

BMW 330i xDrive Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3682
	kg	1670
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1224
	kg	555
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4740
	kg	2150
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2315
	kg	1050
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2624
	kg	1190

BMW 330i xDrive Saloon Weights		
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW 330i xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2877
	kg	1305
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	4905
	kg	2225

BMW M340d xDrive Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	4134
	kg	1875
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1190
	kg	540
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	5159
	kg	2340

BMW M340d xDrive Saloon Weights		
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2546
	kg	1155
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2778
	kg	1260
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW M340d xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	3020
	kg	1370
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	5324
	kg	2415

BMW M340i xDrive Saloon Weights		
Kerb weight	lb	3968
	kg	1800

BMW M340i xDrive Saloon Weights		
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1179
	kg	535
Maximum permissible gross weight	lb	4949
	kg	2245
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2458
	kg	1115
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2712
	kg	1230
Maximum permissible roof load	lb	165
	kg	75

BMW M340i xDrive Saloon Trailer operation		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 8 % gradient	lb	3968
	kg	1800
Maximum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	165
	kg	75
Minimum permissible trailer nose weight	lb	55
	kg	25
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2965
	kg	1345
Maximum permissible gross weight, towing vehicle	lb	5115
	kg	2320

BMW 3 Series Saloon Attachment points of the trailer tow hitch Distance from zero point, longitudinal direction		
Mounting 1	in	143.0
	mm	3633
Mounting 2	in	143.0
	mm	3633
Mounting 3	in	143.0
	mm	3633
Mounting 4	in	143.0
	mm	3633
Maximum permissible overhang of rear coupling point	in	44.7
	mm	1135

BMW 3 Series Saloon Attachment points of the trailer tow hitch Distance from zero point, transverse direction		
Mounting 1	in	-18.5
	mm	-471
Mounting 2	in	-18.5
	mm	-471
Mounting 3	in	18.5
	mm	471
Mounting 4	in	18.5
	mm	471

BMW 3 Series Saloon Attachment points of the trailer tow hitch Distance from zero point, height		
Mounting 1	in	8.3
	mm	210

BMW 3 Series Saloon Attachment points of the trailer tow hitch Distance from zero point, height		
Mounting 2	in	3.6
	mm	91
Mounting 3	in	8.3
	mm	210
Mounting 4	in	3.6
	mm	91

Seats for child restraint systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes equipment, systems and functions which are offered or may be offered in future on a model-specific basis, even if they are not included in the vehicle in question.

For further information:

Vehicle equipment, see page 8.

Information for manufacturers of child seats

General

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on each seat, in accordance with the ECE-R 16 and ECE-R 129 standards.

Left-hand drive vehicles: Suitability of child restraint systems for each vehicle seat

Seat position	1	3 – Airbag ON	3 – Airbag OFF – a)	4	5	6
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	No	Yes forward facing	Yes rearward facing	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	No	No	B3	No	B3

A seat position without i-Size approval is not compatible with an i-Size support stand.

A seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but with no top tether, is not available.

There are no seat belt buckles for adults between the two bottom ISOFIX anchors.

a) Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is possible depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left
2	Front centre

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
3	Front right
4	Second-row seating left

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
5	Second-row seating centre
6	Second-row seating right
7	Third-row seating left

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
8	Third-row seating centre
9	Third-row seating right

Right-hand drive vehicles: suitability of child restraint systems for each vehicle seat

Seat position	1 – Airbag ON	1 – Airbag OFF – a)	3	4	5	6
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	Yes forward facing	Yes rearward facing	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	No	No	B3	No	B3

A seat position without i-Size approval is not compatible with an i-Size support stand.

A seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but with no top tether, is not available.

There are no seat belt buckles for adults between the two bottom ISOFIX anchors.

a) Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is possible depending on the equipment or national-market version.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left
2	Front centre
3	Front right
4	Second-row seating left
5	Second-row seating centre
6	Second-row seating right
7	Third-row seating left

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
8	Third-row seating centre
9	Third-row seating right

Appendix

General

Here is where any updates to the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle are listed.

Updates after going to press

After the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle went to press, the following chapters were updated in the printed Owner's Handbook:

- Operation: Driver assistance systems: Lane Change Assistant: Displays in the instrument cluster.

License Texts and Certifications

Paraguay

NFC Reader

NR: 2023-10-I-0746

Pakistan

HeadUnit

Garmin

MGU22 (HW5.2.1)

Approved by PTA

TAC NO : 9.1147/2023

UAE

HeadUnit

MGU22 (HW5.2.1)

Everything from A to Z

Index

0–9

A

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

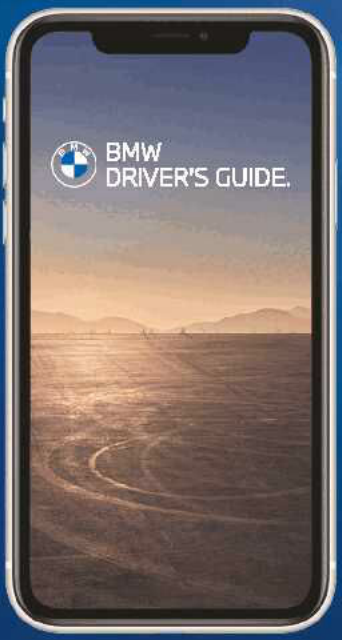
01405B465C4 en

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app tells you all about your vehicle's equipment and offers additional content and functions:



- Everything you need to know about navigation, entertainment and communication
- Photo-realistic animated content demonstrating various vehicle functions
- Keyword search
- 360° View: An interactive virtual tour of the interior and exterior of your vehicle
- Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons inside the vehicle
- Available in more than 30 languages
- Can be downloaded and used offline

01405B465C4 en

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B465C4 - VI/24